Electromagnetics Laboratory
Department of Electrical Engineering
University of Colorado, Boulder, Colorado 80302

SOLUTION OF ELECTROMAGNETIC PROBLEMS USING THE MODIFIED RESIDUE CALCULUS AND FUNCTIONAL THEORETIC TECHNIQUES†

by

James P. Montgomery and David C. Chang

June 1974

Scientific Report No. 8

Prepared for

Electromagnetic Division
U.S. National Bureau of Standards
Boulder, Colorado 80302

[†]This research was supported by the U.S. National Bureau of Standards under contract no. AMT-8500.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART I

SOLUTION OF CLOSED REGION PROBLEMS

| CHAPTER | | PACE |
|---------|--|--|
| 1. | INTRODUCTION (PART I) | 1 |
| 2. | FOUNDATION OF THE MODIFIED RESIDUE CALCULUS TECHNIQUE | 7 7 7 |
| 3. | THE TRIFURCATED WAVEGUIDE | 22 22 22 26 29 32 35 37 37 38 |
| ц. | THE N-FURCATED WAVEGUIDE | 49 49 49 54 60 64 67 68 68 |

| CHAPTER | • | PAGE |
|---------|--|--|
| 5. | OTHER CLOSED REGION PROBLEMS. 1. Introduction | 75 75 32 84 |
| 6. | CONCLUSIONS (PART I) | 81 |
| | PART II | |
| | SOLUTION OF OPEN REGION PROBLEMS | |
| CHAPTER | | PÅGE |
| 7. | INTRODUCTION (PART II) | 92 |
| 8. | FOUNDATION OF THE MODIFIED FUNCTION THEORETIC TECHNIQUE | 96 96 96 98 113 |
| 9. | A PARALLEL PLATE WAVEGUIDE RADIATING INTO A HOMOGENEOUS HALF-SPACE | 123 123 123 127 129 |
| 10. | A FINITE PHASED ARRAY | 142 142 142 142 143 154 |

| CHAPTER | | | PAGE |
|----------|-------------------------|---|--|
| | 3. | Numerical Results | 159 159 159 16 171 |
| 11. | | TE SENSING OF THE EARTH USING PARALLEL E WAVEGUIDES | 181 182 182 193 187 190 190 190 |
| 12. | OTHER 1. 2. 3. | R OPEN REGION PROBLEMS | 204 204 205 211 215 |
| 13. | CONC | LUSIONS (PART II) | 218 |
| 14. | COMM | ENTS AND FINAL SUMMARY | 220 |
| BIBLIOGE | RAPHY | | 224 |
| APPENDI | X A: | The Edge Condition and the Asymptotic Behavior of $T(\omega)$ | 227 |
| APPENDI | х В: | Asymptotic Behavior of the Perturbation Sum for the E-Plane Step | 228 |
| APPENDI | X C: | Asymptotic Behavior of the Perturbation Sum for the Trifurcated Waveguide | 232 |
| APPENDI | X D: | Evaluation of the Infinite Product for the Electric Wall Case | 234 |
| APPENDI | X E: | The Canonical Problem with a Magnetic | 027 |

| CHAPTER | | PAGE |
|-------------|--|------|
| APPENDIX F: | The Trifurcated Waveguide with a Magnetic Wall | 239 |
| APPENDIX G: | Computer Program Listings | 242 |

LIST OF TABLES

| TABLE | | PAGE |
|---------|--|------|
| 3.7.2.1 | Convergence Results for the Tri-furcated Waveguide | 39 |
| 3.7.2.2 | Convergence Results for the Tri-furcated Waveguide | 39 |
| 3.7.2.3 | Effect of the Choice of Truncation on the Convergence | ģ0 |
| 3.7.2.4 | Convergence of Direct Truncation | 41 |
| 3.7.2.5 | Effect of Multimoding on the Con- vergence Results of the Trifurcated Waveguide (Conventional Truncation) | 42 |
| 3.7.2.6 | Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results of the Trifurcated Waveguide (Asymptotic Truncation) | 42 |
| 3.7.2.7 | Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results of the Trifurcated Waveguide (Direct Truncation) | 43 |
| 3.7.3.1 | Convergence Results for the Dielec- trically Loaded Trifurcated Wave- guide | 47 |
| 3.7.3.2 | Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results for the Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Waveguide (Convertional Truncation) | . 48 |
| 4.7.2.1 | Convergence Results for the N-furcated Waveguide (Hybrid Truncation) | 69 |
| 4.7.2.2 | Convergence Results for the N-furcated Waveguide (Asymptotic Truncation) | 70 |

| TABLE | | PAGE |
|----------|--|-------|
| 4.7.2.3 | Convergence Results for the N-furcated Waveguide (Direct Truncation | em 5 |
| 4.7.3.1 | Convergence Results for the Dielec- trically Loaded N-furcated Waveguide (Hybrid Truncation) | 73 |
| 9.4.1 | Convergence of Reflection Coefficient for a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space | 1 - 1 |
| 9.4.2 | Convergence of Reflection Coefficient for a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space | 133 |
| 10.3.2.1 | Convergence of Open Region Solution | 165 |
| 10.3.2.2 | Convergence of Open Region Solution | 166 |
| 10.3.3.1 | Convergence of Open Region Results | 171 |
| 10.3.3.2 | Convergence of Open Region Results | 175 |
| 10.3.4.1 | Scattering Coefficients of Lee's Array | 177 |
| 11.3.2.1 | Convergence of Open Region Solution | 196 |
| 11.3.2.2 | Convergence of Open Region Solution | 195 |
| 11.3.3.1 | Convergence of Open Region Solution | 199 |

LIST OF FIGURES

| FIGURE | | PACT |
|---------|--|-------|
| 2.2.1 | The Canonical Problem: The Bifur-cated Waveguide | 8 |
| 2.3.1 | The E-Plane Step and the Auxiliary Problem | 18 |
| 3.2.1 | The Trifurcated Waveguide and the Auxiliary Problem | 23 |
| 3.5.1 | Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Wave-guide and the Auxiliary Problem | 33 |
| 3.7.2.1 | Comparison of Methods of Truncation for the Trifurcated Waveguide | J; J; |
| 3.7.2.2 | Typical Perturbation Coefficients for the Trifurcated Waveguide | 46 |
| 4.2.1 | The N-furcated Waveguide and the Auxiliary Problem | 50 |
| 4.3.1 | The Sequential Collapse of the N-furcated Waveguide Junction | 56 |
| 4.5.1 | Dielectrically Loaded N-furcated Waveguide | 65 |
| 5.2.1 | Ridged Waveguide | 76 |
| 5.3.1 | The Dielectric Step | 83 |
| 5.4.1 | Variation of the Coupling Coefficient of Two Parallel Plate Waveguides with the Earth's Parameters | 86 |
| 5.4.2 | Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of Two Parallel Plate Waveguides with the Earth's Parameters | 88 |
| 5.4.3 | The Combined Argand Diagram | 89 |
| 8.2.1 | . Parallel Plate Waveguide | 97 |
| 8.2.2 | Parallel Plate Waveguide | 99 |
| | Branch Cut Selection of $Y = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - k^2}$ | 100 |

| FIGURE | | PAGE |
|--------|---|-------|
| 8.2.4 | Branch Cut Selection of $\lambda = \sqrt{\gamma^2 + k_0^2}$ | 100 |
| 8.2.5 | The Integration Contour, Σ | 1/3 |
| 8.2.6 | Path Location for Use with Fig. 8.2.7 | 110 |
| 8.2.7 | Phase of the Argument of the Logarithm | 111 |
| 8.3.1 | The Flanged Parallel Plate Waveguide | 1.1.9 |
| 9.2.1 | Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Homogeneous Half Space | 124 |
| 9.4.1 | Variation of the Perturbation Spectrum along L_1 | 130 |
| 9.4.2 | Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Perfectly Conducting Sheet as a Function of the Distance from the Aperture to the Conductor | 132 |
| 9.4.3 | Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of Distance and Dielectric Parameters | 135 |
| 9.4.4 | Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters | • 137 |
| 9.4.5 | Fresnel Current Reflection Coefficient as a Function of Dielectric Parameters | 138 |
| 9.4.6 | Matched Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters | 139 |
| 9.4.7 | Approximate Equivalent Circuit | 140 |

| FIGURE | | PAGE |
|----------|--|-------------|
| 10.2.1 | The Finite Array with an Electric Symmetry Boundary | 144 |
| 10.2.2 | The Finite Array with a Magnetic Symmetry Boundary | 146 |
| 10.3.2.1 | Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of b ₁ | 160 |
| 10.3.2.2 | Coupling Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of b ₁ | १८ २ |
| 10.3.2,3 | Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of b ₁ | 164 |
| 10.3.2.4 | Element Patterns for Even Excitation of Lee's Array | 168 |
| 10.3.3.1 | Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide with Magnetic Wall as a Function of b ₃ | 169 |
| 10.3.3.2 | Element Patterns for Odd Excitation of Lee's Array | 172 |
| 10.3.4.1 | Mutual Coupling Between Two Parallel Plate Waveguides | 173 |
| 10.3.4.2 | Phase of Mutual Coupling Between Two Parallel Plate Waveguides | 174 |
| 10.3.4.3 | Active Reflection Coefficient of Lee's Array | 178 |
| 10.3.4.4 | Complete Element Patterns of Lee's Array | 179 |
| 11.2.2.1 | Auxiliary Problem for Finite Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space | 184 |
| 11.2.3.1 | Auxiliary Problem for Finite Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space | 188 |
| | | |

•

| FIGURE | | PAGE |
|----------|---|------|
| 11.3.2.1 | Scattering Parameters of Dielec- trically Loaded Waveguide as a Function of b ₁ | j. 2 |
| 11.3.3.1 | Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of the Magnetic Wall Case as a Function of Distance | 198 |
| 11.3.4.1 | Reflection Coefficient of One Element of a Two Element Parallel Plate Waveguide Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters | 200 |
| 11.3.4.2 | Matched Reflection Coefficient of One Element of a Two Element Parallel Plate Waveguide Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters | 201 |
| 11.3.4.3 | Coupling Between Two Parallel Plate Waveguides Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters | 202 |
| 12.2.1 | Flanged Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space | 206 |
| 12.3.1 | The Thick Half Plane | 212 |
| 12.4.1 | Series Slot Admittance | 217 |

Solution of Electromagnetic Problems Using the Modified Residue Calculus and Function

Theoretic Techniques

Part I

Solution of Closed Region Problems

| | | | , | |
|--|--|--|---|---|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | 4 |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

This part of the dissertation is concerned with the analysis of closed region waveguide junction problems. This allows simplification of the techniques to be used since no branch cuts are involved in the representation of the fields. However, the analysis can be extended to open region problems in a logical manner. This is the subject of part two of this dissertation.

The problems of interest will be confined to the dimensional geometries for which a strictly TE or TM solution is possible.

Direct mode matching could be employed as a method of solution of the problems to be presented. However, direct mode matching has several disadvantages which often outweigh the simplicity of the method. One of the disadvantages is that many problems have been shown to exhibit a relative convergence phenomena with regard to the truncation of the modal representations of the various regions. For the bifurcated waveguide the solution is known (Mittra and Lee, 1971) to converge to the correct result for the ratio of the number of modes being chosen equal to the ratio of the heights of the waveguides. This choice ensures the satisfaction of the edge condition of the problem and hence the uniqueness of the solution. However, for more complicated structures the solution is not generally known. Accurate solutions are still possible; however, this is often at the expense of including

an excessively large number of modes in the larger waveguide region. For the most efficient solution one must
have some guidelines in the choice of the number of
modes of the various regions. For many problems this is
not possible without an extensive numerical convergence
study. Even with this disadvantage, mode matching is
often used because of its simplicity or generality. How
ever, mode matching has another disadvantage that is often
overlooked. Direct mode matching does not use a particular information regarding the geometry. For example, the bifurcated waveguide solution is known exactly; yet, a
direct mode matching solution is of the same order of
difficulty as a nonsoluble geometry.

For many problems there are two analysis techniques which appear to be superior to direct mode matching: the generalized scattering matrix technique (GSMT) and the modified residue calculus technique (MRCT). Both of these techniques recognize that many problems are composed of a combination of soluble problems. The GSMT and the MRCT are used to solve problems by efficiently combining these known solutions. Additionally, these methods are not known to exhibit a relative convergence phenomena and uniqueness of the solution is generally assured.

The basic soluble problem used in the solution of two dimensional waveguide discontinuity problems is the bifurcated waveguide. It is well known that the solution

of the bifurcated waveguide can be obtained either by the Wiener-Hopf method or the residue calculus technique (Mittra and Lee, 1971). Pace and Mittra (1964) originally used these known solutions in conjunction with the generalized scattering matrix technique (GSMT) to arrive at the solution of composite problems. These composite problems were obtained by identifying an auxiliary problem such that it was clear that the solution of the problem was a modification of the bifurcated junction. An aistances and material parameters approached limiting values the solution to the original problem was obtained.

The GSMT, although a numerically efficient scheme, has one particular weakness. Since the GSMT uses truncated matrix representations of junctions, it is difficult to show that the edge conditions of composite problems are either changed or added to the edge conditions of the soluble problems. Since the edge conditions of the composite problem may not be satisfied, one may not be assured of the uniqueness of the solution. However, it is frequently the case that these effects are small when calculating quantities such as dominant mode reflection coefficients. Van Blaricum and Mittra (1969) remedied this for a certain class of problems. They made use of the same auxiliary problem used in the GSMT; however, they formulated the problem in a manner where a modified residue calculus technique (MRCT) was used. The MRCT solution was obtained by recognizing that the solution to

the problem is obtained by shifting zeroes of the original residue calculus solution of the bifurcated waveguide. These shifted zeroes could be found asymptotically by using the edge condition of the problem. Iterative an matrix techniques were used (Mittra and Lee, 1971) to find a finite set of shifted zeroes or the equivalent Lagrangian interpolating polynomial representation. Only a small number of these zeroes where needed to accurately find such quantities as the reflection coefficients of the dominant modes. Additionally, because the solution explicitly satisfied the edge condition, the convergence of the results was better than the GSMT solution.

Recently, Royer and Mittra (1972) examined a dielectric step in a parallel plate waveguide. Since there was interest in high dielectric constants, the solution was formulated using an extension of the MRCT. However, the asymptotic shift of zeroes could not be found. Thus an infinite form of a Lagrangian interpolating polynomial was used instead of a shifted zero representation. The asymptotic form of the coefficients of the expansion were found from an application of the edge condition. This enabled the infinite equations to be truncated and solved in an efficient manner.

This part of the dissertation studies a canonical problem of a bifurcated waveguide with infinitely many known modes incident from all guides. The solution of the problem can be expressed advantageously using an

infinite form of the Lagrangian interpolating polynomial. This solution can then be used to solve various composite problems. In particular, the E-plane step is solved using this representation as opposed to a shifted zero representation.

The canonical solution is then applied to junctions which have not been solved using the MRCT previously. Solutions are given for the trifurcated waveguide as well as the modification of the junction due to dielec look loading. The trifurcated waveguide for arbitrary spacing of the plates has been solved by Pace and Mittra (1966) using the GSMT.

The solution of the trifurcated waveguide is then generalized to the N-furcated waveguide with arbitrary spacing of the conducting plates. The general solution of an arbitrary number of plates has been given formally by Heins (1948). Heins' solution, however, has little practical value. A more elegant solution has been given by Igarashi (1964). Igarashi used a diagonalization procedure in conjunction with the simultaneous Wiener-Hopf equations and obtained explicit expressions for the fields in the various waveguides. A necessary condition for the diagonalization of the equations was equal spacing of the conducting plates. No such restriction is necessary for the MRCT solution of the N-furcated waveguide. The solution is also given for a particular dielectric loading of the N-furcated waveguide.

One interesting point of the MRCT solution of these problems is that multiple edge conditions are explicitly satisfied, thus enhancing the convergence of the solution over those which have been (or might be) obtained using the GSMT.

Chapter 5 serves as a forum for discussing solutions of other closed region problems. Among these are: the eigenvalve solution of ridged waveguide and the dielectric step in a waveguide. Additionally, further numerical results are presented for the N-furcated waveguide.

It should be noted that these concepts can be used to solve many problems which are modifications of soluble Wiener-Hopf problems other than just the bifurcated wave-guide.

Chapter 2: Foundation of the Modified Residue Calculus Technique

1. Introduction

This part of the dissertation is concerned with problems which are modifications of the bifurcated waveguide.

It is the purpose of this chapter to show that the modified residue calculus technique can be approached in a
direct manner by considering the canonical problem of a
bifurcated waveguide with infinitely many modes incluent
from all waveguides. The general solution can be conveniently written in the form of a perturbation expansion.

It is then shown that this solution can be applied to
composite problems such as the E-plane waveguide step.

2. The Canonical Problem

The canonical problem is shown in Figure 2.2.1.

The solution to this problem has been known for a number of years. The solution can be found by either the Wiener-Hopf technique or the residue calculus technique (Mittra and Lee, 1971). However, previous solutions have been concerned with a single mode incident from one of the three waveguides. The solution to be given here represents a superposition of these solutions. However, the form of this solution is of interest when solving composite problems.

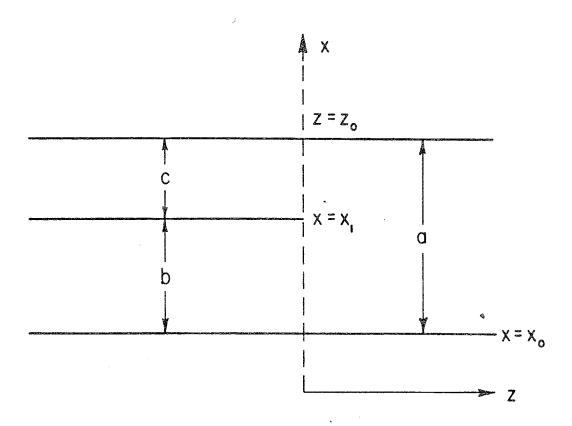


Fig. 2.2.1: The Canonical Problem: The Bifurcated Waveguide.

Let us consider the TM solution of the problem. The TE solution follows in the same manner and will not be given.

The TM fields are derivable from φ = $H_{\mbox{\it y}}$ and the fields in each region are given by

$$\phi_{A} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(A_{n}^{(o)} e^{\gamma_{n} a^{z}} + A_{n} e^{-\gamma_{n} a^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{a} (x-x_{0})$$

$$\phi_{B} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(B_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{n} b^{z}} + B_{n} e^{\gamma_{n} b^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{b} (x-x_{0})$$

$$\phi_{C} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(C_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{n} c^{z}} + C_{n} e^{\gamma_{n} c^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{c} (x-x_{1})$$

where the superscript (o) indicates an incident field and

$$\gamma_{\rm nh} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{(n\pi/h)^2 - k_0^2} & n\pi/h > k_0^* \\ \sqrt{k_0^2 - (\frac{n\pi}{h})^2} & n\pi/h < k_0 \end{cases}$$

and a time convention, $e^{j\omega t}$, is assumed and suppressed.

Matching the tangential fields at $z=z_0$ we can arrive at the equations

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(A_{n}^{(o)} e^{\gamma_{n} a^{z}} + A_{n} e^{-\gamma_{n} a^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{a} (x-x_{0}) =$$

$$\begin{cases} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(C_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{n} c^{z}} + C_{n} e^{\gamma_{n} c^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{c} (x-x_{1}); & x_{1} \le x \le x_{1} + c, \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(B_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{n} b^{z}} + B_{n} e^{\gamma_{n} b^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{b} (x-x_{0}); & x_{0} \le x \le x_{0} + b \end{cases}$$

and

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_{na} \begin{pmatrix} A_{n} & e^{\gamma_{na}z_{0}} - A_{n} & e^{-\gamma_{na}z_{0}} \end{pmatrix} \cos \frac{n\pi}{a} (x-x_{0}) =$$

$$\begin{cases} -\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_{nc} \begin{pmatrix} C_{n} & e^{-\gamma_{nc}z_{0}} - C_{n} & e^{\gamma_{nc}z_{0}} \end{pmatrix} \cos \frac{n\pi}{c} (x-x_{1}); \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_{nb} \begin{pmatrix} B_{n} & e^{-\gamma_{nb}z_{0}} - B_{n} & e^{\gamma_{nb}z_{0}} \end{pmatrix} \cos \frac{n\pi}{b} (x-x_{0}); \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_{nb} \begin{pmatrix} B_{n} & e^{-\gamma_{nb}z_{0}} - B_{n} & e^{\gamma_{nb}z_{0}} \end{pmatrix} \cos \frac{n\pi}{b} (x-x_{0}); \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_{nb} \begin{pmatrix} B_{n} & e^{-\gamma_{nb}z_{0}} - B_{n} & e^{\gamma_{nb}z_{0}} \end{pmatrix} \cos \frac{n\pi}{b} (x-x_{0});$$

We may use the orthogonality of the eigenfunction expansions and eliminate coefficients to obtain the following four equations.

$$\gamma_{mb}^{B}_{m}^{B} b \epsilon_{m}^{A} e^{\gamma_{mb}^{Z}} = 2jk_{o}^{A} b A_{o}^{(o)} e^{jk_{o}^{Z}} \delta_{mo}$$

$$+ (-1)^{m+1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_{n}^{(o)} \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{\gamma_{na}^{Z}} \delta_{na}^{O}}{\gamma_{mb} - \gamma_{na}}$$

$$+ (-1)^{m+1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_{n}^{(o)} \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{-\gamma_{na}^{Z}} \delta_{na}^{O}}{\gamma_{mb}^{A} + \gamma_{na}^{A}}; m = 0, 1, 2, \cdots$$

$$\gamma_{mb}^{(o)} b \epsilon_{m}^{O} e^{-\gamma_{mb}^{Z}} = 2jk_{o}^{O} b A_{o}^{O} e^{-jk_{o}^{Z}} \delta_{mo}$$

$$+ (-1)^{m+1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_{n}^{(o)} \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{\gamma_{na}^{Z}} \delta_{na}^{O}}{\gamma_{mb} + \gamma_{na}^{O}}$$

$$(2.2)$$

+
$$(-1)^{m+1}$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{-\gamma_n a^2}}{\gamma_{mb} - \gamma_{na}}; \quad m = 0, 1, 2, \cdots$$

$$\gamma_{mc} c_m c \epsilon_m e^{\gamma_{mc} c_0} = 2jk_0 c A_0^{(0)} e^{jk_0 c_0} \delta_{mo}$$

$$+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n^{(o)} \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{\gamma_n a^2 o}}{\gamma_{mc} - \gamma_{na}}$$
 (8.3)

+
$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{-\gamma_n a^2}}{\gamma_{mc} + \gamma_{na}}; \quad m = 0,1,2,\cdots,$$

$$\gamma_{mc} c_{m}^{(o)} c \epsilon_{m} e^{-\gamma_{mc} c} = 2jk_{o}c A_{o} e^{-jk_{o} c} \delta_{mo}$$

$$+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n^{(o)} \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{\gamma_{na}^{z} o}}{\gamma_{mc} + \gamma_{na}}$$
(2.4)

+
$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{-\gamma_n a^2}}{\gamma_{mc} - \gamma_{na}}; \quad m = 0,1,2,\cdots.$$

where

$$\varepsilon_{\rm m} = \{2, m = 0 \\ 1, m \ge 1 \}$$

and δ_{mn} is the Kronecker delta.

Equations (2.2) and (2.4) relate the unknown modal amplitudes A_n and the incident fields. Equations (2.1) and (2.3) relate the unknown modal amplitudes A_n to B_n and C_n .

For m=0, (2.2) and (2.4) become identical in form, allowing one to eliminate the summations and find

$$A_{o} = \frac{c}{a} C_{o}^{(o)} + \frac{b}{a} B_{o}^{(o)}$$
 (2.5)

which is a unique feature of the TM solution.

In order to construct the complete solution to the equations let us consider the following integrals

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \oint \frac{T(\omega)d\omega}{\omega - \gamma_{mb}}, \quad \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint \frac{T(\omega)d\omega}{\omega - \gamma_{mc}}$$
 (2.6)

where $m=0,1,2,\cdots$ and $T(\omega)$ is to be constructed uniquely with the residue series of these integrals identical with equations (2.2) and (2.4). The contour of integration is the infinite circle in the complex ω plane. We assume that $T(\omega)$ behaves appropriately at infinity so that the integrals exist and are zero.

Let us first assume that $T(\omega)$ has simple poles at $\gamma_{na}, \ -\gamma_{na}, \ n$ = 1,2,... Then

$$\frac{1}{2\pi \mathbf{j}} \oint \frac{\mathbf{T}(\omega) d\omega}{\omega - \gamma_{\text{mc}}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{RES}[\mathbf{T}, \gamma_{\text{na}}]}{\gamma_{\text{na}} - \gamma_{\text{mc}}} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{RES}[\mathbf{T}, -\gamma_{\text{na}}]}{\gamma_{\text{na}} + \gamma_{\text{mc}}} + \mathbf{T}(\gamma_{\text{mc}}) = 0.$$
(2.7)

and

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi \mathbf{j}} \oint \frac{\mathbf{T}(\omega) d\omega}{\omega - \gamma_{mb}} = (-1)^{m+1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{RES}[\mathbf{T}, \gamma_{na}]}{\gamma_{na} - \gamma_{mb}}$$

$$- (-1)^{m+1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{RES}[\mathbf{T}, -\gamma_{na}]}{\gamma_{na} + \gamma_{mb}} \qquad (2.8)$$

$$+ (-1)^{m+1} \mathbf{T}(\gamma_{mb}) = 0.$$

where $m = 0,1,2,\cdots$. Comparing (2.7) and (2.8) with (2.4) and (2.2) we find

(i) RES
$$[T, -\gamma_{ma}] = -A_m^{(o)} \frac{m\pi}{a} \sin \frac{m\pi b}{a} e^{\gamma_{ma} z_o}$$
 $m = 1, 2, \cdots$

(ii) RES[T,
$$\gamma_{ma}$$
] = $-A_m \frac{m\pi}{a} \sin \frac{m\pi b}{a} e^{-\gamma_{ma} z}$ o $m = 1,2,\cdots$

(iii)
$$T(\gamma_{mc}) = -C_m^{(o)} \gamma_{mc} c e^{-\gamma_{mb} z}$$
 $m = 1, 2, \cdots$

(iv)
$$T(\gamma_{mb}) = (-1)^m B_m^{(o)} \gamma_{mb} b e^{-\gamma_{mb} z_0}$$
 $m = 1, 2, \cdots$
(v) $T(jk_0) = 2jk_0 c e^{-jk_0 z_0} (A_0 - C_0^{(o)})$

We can also consider the integrals

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \oint \frac{T(\omega)d\omega}{\omega + \gamma_{mb}} \qquad \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint \frac{T(\omega)d\omega}{\omega + \gamma_{mc}}$$
(2.9)

where $m = 0,1,2,\cdots$. Using the above properties we find the following by comparing with (2.1) and (2.3)

(vi)
$$T(-\gamma_{mc}) = C_{m} \gamma_{mc} c e^{\gamma_{mc} z_{o}}$$
 $m = 2.2.$ (vii) $T(-\gamma_{mb}) = (-1)^{m+1} \gamma_{mb} b B_{m} e^{\gamma_{mb} z_{o}}$ $m = 1, 2, ...$ (viii) $T(-jk_{o}) = 2jk_{o}c[C_{o} - A_{o}^{(o)}] e^{jk_{o}z_{o}}$ (ix) $T(-jk_{o}) = -2jk_{o}b[B_{o} - A_{o}^{(o)}] e^{jk_{o}z_{o}}$

From Appendix A it is shown that the edge condition implies $T(\omega) = 0$ ($\omega^{-1/2}$) as $|\omega| \to \infty$ and hence the assumption regarding the convergence of the integrals is justified. Because of its importance let us also consider this in our list of properties of $T(\omega)$ (for the bifurcated case only)

(x)
$$T(\omega) = 0 (\omega^{-1/2}), |\omega| \rightarrow \infty$$

Upon finding $T(\omega)$ the complete solution to the problem is given by (ii), (vi), (vii), (viii) and (ix). Hence, let us consider the construction of $T(\omega)$.

The clue to the construction is found by considering the solution with only a single mode incident on the

junction. For simplicity say the incident mode is $B_O^{(o)}=1$. Then (i) implies that $T(\omega)$ has no poles at $-\gamma_{na}$; (iii) implies that $T(\omega)$ has simple zeroes at γ_{mc} ; and (iv) implies that $T(\omega)$ has simple zeroes at γ_{mb} . Hence

$$T(\omega) = H(\omega) \frac{I(\omega, \gamma_b) I(\omega, \gamma_c)}{I(\omega, \gamma_a)}$$
 (2.10)

where

$$\mathbb{I}(\omega,\gamma_h) = \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{\omega}{\gamma_{nh}}\right) e^{\omega h/n\pi}$$

and $H(\omega)$ is an entire function with no zeroes. The exponential factor has been introduced into the infinite product in order to insure uniform convergence. However, when the products are grouped as in (2.10) the exponential is not needed. From Mittra and Lee (1971) we find that as $|\omega| \to \infty$

$$T(\omega) = 0 \left\{ H(\omega) \ \omega^{-1/2} \ e^{\omega/\pi \left[b \ \ln \frac{b}{a} + c \ \ln \frac{c}{a}\right]} \right\}, \omega \neq |\omega|$$

In order for condition (x) to be met we must have

$$H(\omega) = K e^{-\omega/\pi[b \ln(b/a) + c \ln(c/a)]}$$
 (2.11)

where K is a constant. However, K can be determined from (v)

$$T(jk_o) = K H(jk_o) \frac{I(jk_o, \gamma_b) I(jk_o, \gamma_c)}{II(jk_o, \gamma_a)}$$
$$= 2jk_o c e^{-jk_o z_o} \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)$$

Hence, the solution is

$$T(\omega) = 2jk_0 \frac{bc}{a} e^{-jk_0 z} \circ \frac{H(\omega) F(\omega)}{H(jk_0) F(jk_0)}$$
(2.12)

where $F(\omega) = \frac{II(\omega, \gamma_b)II(\omega, \gamma_c)}{II(\omega, \gamma_a)}$. The reflection coefficient is given by (ix)

$$B_{o} = \frac{-c}{a} e^{-jk_{o}z_{o}} \frac{H(-jk_{o}) F(-jk_{o})}{H(jk_{o}) F(jk_{o})}$$
(2.13)

When the waveguides are single moded structures $|B_0| = c/a$, a well known result (Marcuvitz, 1964).

Let us now consider how (2.12) can be modified to reflect the general solution. From (i) we see that if $A_m^{(o)} \not\equiv 0$ we must introduce simple poles at $-\gamma_{na}$. Similarly, from (iii) and (iv) we see that we must introduce simple poles at γ_{mb} and γ_{mc} in order to remove the zeroes of $F(\omega)$. This leads us to consider a function of the form

$$T(\omega) = H(\omega) F(\omega) \left\{ K_{o} - (\omega - jk_{o}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(b)}}{\omega - \gamma_{nb}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(c)}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(a)}}{\omega + \gamma_{na}} \right\} \right\}$$

$$(2.14)$$

where

$$H(\omega) = e^{-\omega/\pi[b \ln b/a + c \ln c/a]}$$

 K_0 , $g_n^{(a)}$, $g_n^{(b)}$ and $g_n^{(c)}$ can be obtained by using (i), (iii), (iv), and (v).

$$K_0H(jk_0)F(jk_0) = 2jk_0 c e^{-jk_0z_0}(A_0-C_0^{(0)})$$
 (2.15)

$$H(-\gamma_{na})F(-\gamma_{na})(\gamma_{na}+jk_{o}) g_{n}^{(a)}$$

$$= -A_{n}^{(o)} \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a} e^{\gamma_{na}z_{o}} \qquad n = 1,2,\cdots$$
(2.16)

$$H(\gamma_{nc})F^{(n)}(\gamma_{nc}) \frac{(\gamma_{nc} - jk_o)}{\gamma_{nc}}g_n^{(c)}$$

$$= -C_n^{(o)} \gamma_{nc} c e^{-\gamma_{nc}z_o} \qquad n = 1,2,\cdots$$
(2.17)

$$H(\gamma_{nb})F^{(n)}(\gamma_{nb}) \frac{(\gamma_{nb}-jk_{o})}{\gamma_{nb}} g_{n}^{(b)}$$

$$= (-1)^{n} B_{n}^{(o)} \gamma_{nb}^{(o)} b e^{-\gamma_{nb}z_{o}} n = 1,2,...$$
(2.18)

where $F^{(n)}(\gamma_{nc})$ and $F^{(n)}(\gamma_{nb})$ are to be interpreted as omitting the nth zero at either γ_{nc} or γ_{nb} .

This represents the complete general solution to the bifurcated waveguide problem.

3. Formulation and Solution of Composite Problems

The key to the MRCT is the identification of an auxiliary problem. The auxiliary problem is such that the solution may be identified in terms of soluble problems. For example, the auxiliary problem may clearly indicate that the desired solution is a perturbation of a bifurcated waveguide or a parallel plate in a homogeneous space. Mittra and Lee (1970) have indicated a number of such problems.

Before proceeding let us illustrate the above process with a problem which has been solved using the MRCT using the concept of shifted zeroes (Mittra, Lee, Van Blaricum;

1968). We will solve the E-plane step using the canonical solution of section 2.

Figure 2.3.1 illustrates the E-plane step and the auxiliary geometry. Notice that the auxiliary geometry has a recessed dielectric of finite permittivity. When $\delta=0$ and $\epsilon=\infty$, the auxiliary problem coincides with the original E-plane step. Notice that this recession has identified two soluble problems: (1) a bifurcated waveguide junction at z=0, and (2) a dielectric junctic within a parallel plate waveguide at z=- δ . This auxiliary problem allows us to perturb the bifurcated solution advantageously.

For simplicity let us consider the case of TEM incidence from the smaller guide. Extension to higher order incidence or a TE solution is straight forward. The dielectric creates reflections of any scattered modes from the junction at z=0. This may be thought of as an incident field upon the junction. From the canonical solution we recognize that if we knew these modal amplitudes, $T(\omega)$ would be given by (2.14) with $g_n^{(a)} \equiv g_n^{(b)} \equiv 0$ and say $g_n^{(c)} = g_n$. It is still convenient to use this form even with g_n unknown. In this case g_n represents a perturbation of the bifurcated solution due to the dielectric loading. From (2.14) we have

$$T(\omega) = H(\omega)F(\omega) \left[K_o - (\omega - jk_o) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} \right]$$
 (3.1)

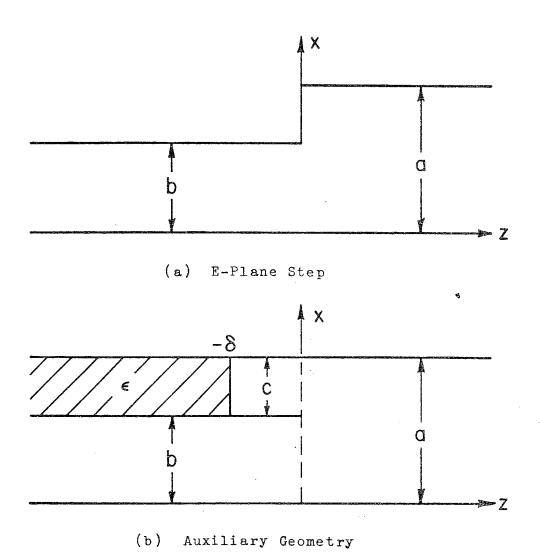


Fig. 2.3.1: The E-Plane Step and the Auxiliary Problem.

where the notation is similar to section 2. This will be referred to as a perturbation type expansion. Using (2.17) we have that

$$g_n = K_n C_n^{(o)}$$
 (3.2)

where K_n is found from (2.17) and involves only simply calculable functions. If we represent the H_y component of the field in the dielectric as

$$\phi_{y} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} D_{n} e^{\prod_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \cos \frac{n\pi}{c} (x-b)}$$
 (3.3)

where

$$\Gamma_{\rm nc} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{n\pi}{c}\right)^2 - \varepsilon k_0^2}$$

we can easily find

$$C_n^{(o)} = R_n C_n = \left(\frac{\varepsilon \gamma_{nc} - \Gamma_{nc}}{\varepsilon \gamma_{nc} + \Gamma_{nc}}\right) e^{-2\gamma_{nc} \delta} C_n$$
 (3.4)

and

$$D_{n} = e^{\frac{\Gamma_{nc}\delta + \gamma_{nc}\delta}{\epsilon \gamma_{nc} - \Gamma_{nc}}} \frac{2\epsilon \gamma_{nc}}{\epsilon \gamma_{nc} - \Gamma_{nc}} C_{n}^{(o)}$$
(3.5)

From Mittra and Lee (1971) $K_n = O(n^{1/2})$ as $n \to \infty$, and thus we see from (3.5) and (3.2) that for $\delta = 0$

$$g_n = O(n^{1/2} D_n), n \rightarrow \infty$$

For the δ = 0 case it is also easy to show (Mittra and Lee, 1971) that

$$D_n = O(n^{-3/2-\Delta}), n \to \infty$$
 (3.6)

where

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{\pi} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{(\varepsilon - 1)}{2(\varepsilon + 1)} \right)$$
 (3.7)

hence

$$g_n = O(n^{-1-\Delta}), n \to \infty$$
 (3.8)

This allows us to write (3.1) in an approximate form suitable for numerical analysis

$$T(\omega) \simeq H(\omega)F(\omega) \left(K_{o} - (\omega - jk_{o}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{g_{n}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} + \overline{g} \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1-\Delta}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} \right\} \right)$$

In this particular problem the edge condition has charged from $T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2})$, $|\omega| \to \infty$, to $T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2-\Delta})$, $|\omega| \to \infty$. An examination of (3.9) reveals that the multiplying term of $H(\omega)F(\omega)$ must be $O(\omega^{-\Delta})$, $|\omega| \to \infty$. This implies that any constant terms contributed by the perturbation sums must cancel with K_0 in order for the higher term of the second sum to dominant. Hence, we must have

$$K_{0} - \sum_{n=1}^{N} g_{n} - \overline{g} \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} n^{-1-\Delta} = 0.$$
 (3.10)

This argument has assumed that

$$\sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1-\Delta}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} = o(\omega^{-1}) + o(\omega^{-1-\Delta})$$
 (3.11)

as $|\omega| \rightarrow \infty$. This is shown in Appendix B.

In order to derive the necessary equations for \boldsymbol{g}_n we consider that

$$T(-\gamma_{mc}) = \gamma_{mc} c C_{m}$$

Using (3.2) and (3.4) we have

$$T(-\gamma_{mc}) = \gamma_{mc} c R_m^{-1} K_m^{-1} g_m m = 1, 2, \dots, N$$
 (3.12)

From (v) and (viii) of section 2 we also have an additional equation

$$K_{o}F(jk_{o})H(jk_{o}) = 2jk_{o}\frac{bc}{a}\left[B_{o}^{(o)} - \frac{R_{o}}{2jk_{o}c}T(-jk_{o})\right]$$
(3.13)

Equations (3.10), (3.12), and (3.13) are the necessary linear equations to solve for K_0 , g_n , and g. The scattered modes in the two regions can then be found by using properties (v) and (iv) of section 2.

It should be noted that the concept of shifted zeroes could have been used to solve this problem. The interested reader is referred to Mittra and Lee (1971). The interesting point of this solution is that the perturbation expansion approach can be used to solve problems that can be solved using the shifted zero technique, but the reverse is not always true (see Royer and Mittra, (1972)).

| | | | | - |
|--|---|--|--|---|
| | | | | " |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | , | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

Chapter 3: The Trifurcated Waveguide

1. Introduction

This chapter is concerned with the application of the MRCT to the trifurcated waveguide and the dielectrically loaded trifurcated waveguide. This type of problem has not been solved by the MRCT previously. However, this problem has been previously solved using the GSMT by Pace and Mittra (1966). It is shown that the satisfaction of the edge condition at both edges by the MRCT solution improves the convergence over that obtained using the GSMT. The solution of the trifurcated waveguide then allows one to proceed to the more complicated case of the N-furcated waveguide with minimal difficulty.

2. Formulation of the Equations

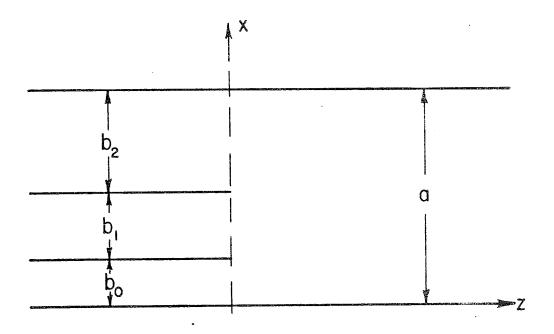
Figure 3.2.1 illustrates the trifurcated waveguide geometry and the associated auxiliary problem.

With reference to the auxiliary problem we see that we are perturbing two bifurcated waveguide junctions.

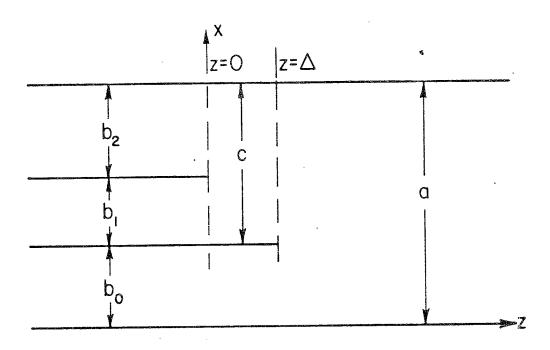
This leads us to construct two meromorphic functions as follows:

$$T_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega)\left(K_{0}^{(1)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(1)}}{\omega + \gamma_{n}c}\right) \quad (2.1)$$

$$T_{2}(\omega) = H_{2}(\omega)F_{2}(\omega)\left(K_{0}^{(2)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(2)}}{\omega - \gamma_{n}}\right) \qquad (2.2)$$



(a) Trifurcated Waveguide



(b) Auxiliary Geometry

Fig. 3.2.1: The Trifurcated Waveguide and the Auxiliary Problem.

where

$$\begin{split} & \mathbf{H}_{1}(\omega) = \mathbf{e} \\ & \mathbf{H}_{2}(\omega) = \mathbf{H}_{2}(\omega) = \mathbf{E} \\ & \mathbf{H}_{2}(\omega) = \mathbf{H}_{2}($$

where TEM mode incidence has been assumed. Extension to higher order TM mode incidence or TE incidence is straight forward. It may be recognized that (2.1) and (2.2) are just special cases of the canonical solution. $T_1(\omega)$ is identified with the junction at z=0. The scattered modes from $z=\Delta$ produce an incident modal spectrum on the junction at z=0 from the coupling region c. From the canonical solution we recognize that $g_n^{(b)}\equiv g_n^{(c)}\equiv 0$ and $g_n^{(a)}=g_n^{(1)}$. Similarly for $T_2(\omega)$ we recognize that the solution is obtained from the canonical solution with $g_n^{(b)}\equiv g_n^{(a)}\equiv 0$ and $g_n^{(c)}=g_n^{(c)}$.

For this particular problem $K_0^{(1)}$ and $K_0^{(2)}$ are known and are given by property (v) of section 2, Chapter 2.

$$K_0^{(1)} = 2jk_0b_2(C_0^+ - B_{0,2}^{(0)})/[H_1(jk_0)F_1(jk_0)]$$
 (2.3)

$$K_0^{(2)} = 2jk_0 c \left(A_0 - C_0^+\right) \left[H_2(jk_0)F_2(jk_0)\right]$$
 (2.4)

where

$$C_0^+ = b_2/c B_{0,2}^{(0)} + b_1/c B_{0,1}^{(0)}$$

$$A_0 = c/a C_0^+ + b_0/a B_{0,0}^{(0)}$$

and $B_{0,n}^{(0)}$ (n = 0,1,2) is the amplitude of the TEM mode incident from the b_n region.

The perturbation coefficients may be related to the modal coefficients C_n^\pm in the coupling region c of the auxiliary problem using properties (i) and (iii) of section 2, Chapter 2.

$$g_n^{(1)} = K_n^{(1)} C_n^-, \quad \dot{n} \ge 1$$
 (2.5)

$$g_n^{(2)} = K_n^{(2)} C_n^+, \quad n \ge 1$$
 (2.6)

where

$$\begin{split} K_n^{(1)} &= \frac{-n\pi}{c} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{c} / \Big(F_1(-\gamma_{nc}) H_1(-\gamma_{nc}) (\gamma_{nc} + jk_0) \Big), n \geq 1 \\ K_n^{(2)} &= -\gamma_{nc}^2 \ c / \Big(F_2^{(n)} (\gamma_{nc}) H_2(\gamma_{nc}) (\gamma_{nc} - jk_0) \Big), \qquad n \geq 1 \\ \text{where } F_2^{(n)} (\gamma_{nc}) \text{ indicates that the nth zero term at } \gamma_{nc} \\ \text{is to be omitted.} \end{split}$$

The equations for $g_n^{(1)}$ and $g_n^{(2)}$ may be derived by requiring that $T_1(\omega)$ and $T_2(\omega)$ give consistent results for the modal coefficients in the coupling region. Using properties (ii) and (vi) of section 2, Chapter 2 and (2.5) and (2.6) we have for $\Delta=0$:

RES[T₁,
$$\gamma_{nc}$$
] = $\frac{-n\pi}{c} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{c} \left(K_n^{(2)}\right)^{-1} g_n^{(2)}$ $n \ge 1$
 $T_2(-\gamma_{nc}) = \gamma_{nc} c \left(K_n^{(1)}\right)^{-1} g_n^{(1)}$, $n \ge 1$ (2.10)

(2.9) and (2.10) represent two infinite sets of equations for the perturbation coefficients $g_n^{(1)}$ and $g_n^{(2)}$.

3. Asymptotics

In order to efficiently truncate equations (2.9) and (2.10), we shall use the asymptotic behavior of the perturbation coefficients.

The asymptotic behavior of $g_n^{(1)}$ and $g_n^{(2)}$ for $\Delta = 0$ is found by considering a double limiting procedu \circ We first consider the asymptotic form for $\Delta \neq 0$, let $n \to \infty$ and then let $\Delta \to 0$. This yields

$$c_n^- = o(n^{-3/2}) \tag{3.1}$$

$$C_n^+ = O(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{c})$$
 (3.2)

where the notation for the mode coefficients in the coupling region is obvious. The oscillatory portion of C_n^+ is necessary in order that the field be properly singular at $x = b_0 + b_1$.

This is an important point. In general if we have N edges of various types in a large guide of dimension a, then the asymptotic behavior as n $\rightarrow \infty$ is

$$A_{n} = \sum_{m=1}^{N} O\left\{n^{-p_{m}} \sin \frac{n\pi}{a} x_{m}\right\}$$
 (3.3)

where \mathbf{x}_{m} is the location of the mth edge and \mathbf{p}_{m} is the power index associated with the edge condition at \mathbf{x}_{m} . This can be more clearly understood if we examine the field in region a

$$H_{y} = \phi_{A} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_{n} e^{-\gamma_{n}a^{z}} \cos \frac{n\pi}{a} x \qquad (3.4)$$

Examine E_z which behaves as $z \xrightarrow{1-p_m}$ as $z \to 0$ and $x = x_m$. Then from Mittra and Lee (1971) we have

$$n A_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{a} x_m = O(n^{1-p_m})$$
 (3.5)

If we multiply (3.3) by $\sin n\pi x_k/a$ all terms will be oscillatory except the term m=k, and we will pick the appropriate edge condition out of the sum. With a single edge this oscillatory term is generally implicitly stated. However, when multiple edges exist it is important to give these terms explicitly.

From Mittra and Lee (1971) we can find that

$$K_n^{(1)} = O(n^{1/2} \sin \frac{n \pi b_1}{c})$$
 (3.6)

$$K_n^{(2)} = (n^{1/2})$$
 (3.7)

Hence from (3.6), (3.7), (2.5) and (2.6) we have

$$g_n^{(1)} = O(n^{-1} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{c})$$
 (3.8)

$$g_n^{(2)} = 0(n^{-1} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{c})$$
 (3.9)

Using (3.8) and (3.9) we can write (2.1) and (2.2) in a form more tractable for numerical computations.

$$T_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega) \left\{ K_{0}^{(1)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \begin{cases} \sum_{n=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{g_{n}^{(1)}}{\omega + \gamma_{nc}} \\ n = 1 \end{cases} + \frac{1}{g} \sum_{n=1+N_{1}}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_{1}/c}{\omega + \gamma_{nc}} \right\}$$
(3.10)

$$T_{2}(\omega) = H_{2}(\omega)F_{2}(\omega) \left\{ K_{0}^{(2)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \begin{cases} \sum_{n=1}^{N_{2}} \frac{g_{n}^{(2)}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} \\ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(2)}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} \end{cases} \right\}$$

$$(3.11)$$

where clearly

$$g_n^{(1)} = \overline{g}^{(1)} n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_1/c, n \ge 1+N_1$$

 $g_n^{(2)} = \overline{g}^{(2)} n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_1/c, n \ge 1+N_2$

Before using (3.10) and (3.11) in (2.9) and (2.10) Let us consider the mode coefficients in the regions a and b, in order to insure that the field is properly singular with the choice (3.8) and (3.9) for the asymptotic behavior of $g_n^{(1)}$ and $g_n^{(2)}$. Using properties (ii) and (vii) of section 2, Chapter 2 we have that

$$RES[T_2, \gamma_{na}] = -A_n \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b_0}{a}$$
 (3.12)

and

$$T_1(-\gamma_{mb_1}) = (-1)^{m+1} \gamma_{mb_1} b_1 B_{m,1}$$
 (3.13)

where $B_{m,l}$ is the mth reflected modal coefficient in the waveguide with dimension b_{γ} .

This leads to an examination of the sums

$$S_1 = \sum_{n=N_1+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_1/c}{n - \frac{cm}{b_1}}, \quad m \to \infty$$

and

$$S_2 = \sum_{n=N_2+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_1/c}{n - \frac{cm}{a}}, \quad m + \infty$$

Thus let us examine the universal sum

$$S = \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\theta}{n - \omega}, \quad \omega \to \infty$$
 (3.14)

In Appendix C it is shown that

$$S = O(\omega^{-1}) + O\left(\omega^{-1} \frac{\sin \omega(\pi - \theta)}{\sin \omega\pi}\right)$$

hence from (3.13)

$$T_1(-\gamma_{mb}) = 0(m^{-1/2}) + 0(m^{-1/2}(-1)^m)$$

and thus

$$B_{m,1} = O(m^{-3/2}) + O(m^{-3/2}(-1)^m)$$

which is in agreement with the concept of (3.3). Similarly,

RES[T₂,
$$\gamma_{na}$$
] = $n^{-1/2} \sin \frac{n\pi b_0}{a} \left(0 \left(\sin \frac{n\pi b_0}{a} \right) + 0 \left(\sin \frac{n\pi (b_0 + b_1)}{a} \right) \right)$

and thus

$$A_{n} = O\left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a}\right) + O\left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n\pi (b_{o} + b_{1})}{a}\right)$$

which agrees with (3.3). Hence the asymptotic choices (3.6), (3.7) allow both edge conditions to be satisfied.

4. Truncation of the Equations

We are now in a position to use the knowledge of the asymptotic behavior of the perturbation coefficients in truncating equations (2.9) and (2.10). This section examines two ways of truncating the equations using the asymptotic behavior of the perturbation coefficients.

The first kind of truncation is what has commonly been used (Royer and Mittra, 1972). This consists of merely choosing extra equations by letting the free indeport of (2.9) and (2.10) take on one additional value. This yields the following simultaneous linear equations

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{g_{m}^{(1)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{+}\gamma_{mc}} + \overline{g}^{(1)} \sum_{m=N_{1}+1}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{1}/c}{\gamma_{nc}^{+}\gamma_{mc}} - \lambda_{n}^{(1)} g_{n}^{(2)}$$

$$= \frac{K_{0}^{(1)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{-}jk_{0}} \qquad n = 1, 2, \dots, 1 - 2$$

$$\lambda_{n}^{(2)} g_{n}^{(1)} + \sum_{m=1}^{N_{2}} \frac{g_{m}^{(2)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{+}\gamma_{mc}} + \overline{g}^{(2)} \sum_{m=N_{2}+1}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{1}/c}{\gamma_{nc}^{+}\gamma_{mc}}$$

$$= \frac{K_{0}^{(2)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{-}jk_{0}} \qquad n = 1, 2, \dots, 1 + N_{1}$$

$$= \frac{K_{0}^{(2)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{-}jk_{0}} \qquad n = 1, 2, \dots, 1 + N_{1}$$

$$= \frac{K_{0}^{(2)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{-}jk_{0}} \qquad n = 1, 2, \dots, 1 + N_{1}$$

$$= \frac{K_{0}^{(2)}}{\gamma_{nc}^{-}jk_{0}} \qquad n = 1, 2, \dots, 1 + N_{1}$$

where

$$\lambda_{n}^{(1)} = \frac{\frac{n\pi}{c} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{1}}{c}}{H_{1}(\gamma_{nc})RES[F_{1},\gamma_{nc}](\gamma_{nc}-jk_{0})K_{n}^{(2)}}$$
(4.3)

$$\lambda_{n}^{(2)} = \frac{\gamma_{nc} c}{H_{2}(-\gamma_{nc})F_{2}(-\gamma_{nc})(\gamma_{nc}+jk_{0})K_{n}^{(1)}}$$
(4.4)

Note that since we are not changing an edge condition but adding an edge condition, an equation comparable to (3.10) is not needed.

It should be noted that with any truncation there are an infinite number of equations which remain. As in other MRCT solutions these remaining equations can be used as a check on accuracy of the solution.

Of course, the above choice is not the only manner of truncation. For example one can equate the leading asymptotic terms of equations (2.9) and (2.10). This results in two equations independent of a free index. Using the asymptotic expressions for the infinite product in Mittra and Lee (1971) we find from (2.9)

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N_1} g_n^{(1)} + \overline{g}^{(1)} \sum_{n=1+N_1}^{\infty} n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_1/c$$

$$+ \frac{\pi}{c} P_1 \overline{g}^{(2)} = K_0^{(1)}$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N_2} g_n^{(2)} + \overline{g}^{(2)} \sum_{n=1+N_2}^{\infty} n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_1/c$$

$$- \pi P_2 \overline{g}^{(1)} = K_0^{(2)}$$
(4.6)

where

$$P_1 = \sqrt{\frac{b_1 c a}{b_0}}$$

and

$$P_2 = \sqrt{\frac{b_0 c^2}{a b_1 b_2}}$$

The remaining equations are chosen as in the previous truncation.

Of course, there is also another possible choice.

This is the direct truncation of the original equations.

However, because of the arguments given in section 3, this solution will not explicitly satisfy both of the edge conditions of the problem. However, in the calculation of the dominant mode reflection coefficients and coupling coefficients, this may not be overly important.

5. Dielectric Loading

Figure 3.5.1 illustrates a trifurcated waveguide with dielectric loading in the largest waveguide. The auxiliary problem is similar to the normal trifurcated waveguide.

With reference to the auxiliary problem we see that we can identify a function $T_1(\omega)$ with the junction at $z = -\Delta$.

$$T_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega)\left[K_{0}^{(1)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(1)}}{\omega + \gamma_{nc}}\right]$$
 (5.1)

This equation is identical to (2.1). However, the function (2.2) for the junction at z=0 is modified to be

$$T_{2}(\omega) = H_{2}(\omega)F_{2}(\omega) \left\{ K_{0}^{(2)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(2)}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(3)}}{\omega + \gamma_{na}} \right\} \right\}$$

$$(5.2)$$

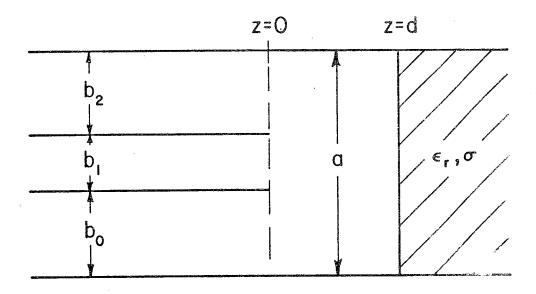
where $g_n^{(3)}$ corresponds to $g_n^{(a)}$ of the canonical solution, due to the presence of the dielectric.

Equations (2.3) - (2.10) apply to the dielectrically loaded case if the expression for $T_2(\omega)$ given in (5.2) is used.

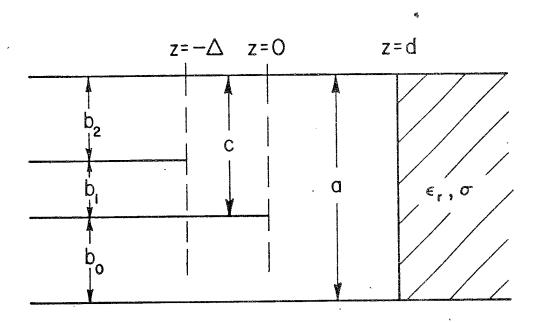
Similarly we still have

$$g_n^{(1)}, g_n^{(2)} = 0 \left(n^{-1} \sin \frac{n \pi b_1}{c} \right)$$

since for $d \neq 0$ we are not changed or adding an edge condition.



(a) Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Waveguide



(b) Auxiliary Geometry

Fig. 3.5.1: Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Waveguide and the Auxiliary Problem.

In order to account for the dielectric consider the following. In the region between the trifurcated junction and the dielectric, the field is given by

$$\phi = H_y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(A_n^{(o)} e^{\gamma_{na}z} + A_n e^{-\gamma_{na}z} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi}{a} z \quad (5.3)$$

and it is easily shown that

$$A_n^{(o)} = R_n A_n \tag{5.4}$$

where

$$R_{n} = \frac{\varepsilon \gamma_{na} - \Gamma_{na}}{\varepsilon \gamma_{na} + \Gamma_{na}} e^{-2\gamma_{na}d}$$
 (5.5)

and where

$$\Gamma_{\text{na}} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{n\pi}{a}\right)^2 - \varepsilon k_0^2}$$

We will consider the case of conduction losses in the dielectric by using the complex permittivity

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_{r} - j \frac{120 \pi \sigma}{k_{o}}$$
 (5.6)

From property (i) of section 2, Chapter 2 we have that

$$g_n^{(3)} = K_n^{(3)} A_n^{(0)}$$
 (5.7)

where

$$K_n^{(3)} = \frac{-n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b_0}{a} / [F_2(-\gamma_{na})H_2(-\gamma_{na})(\gamma_{na} + jk_0)]$$
(5.8)

The asymptotic behavior of $g_n^{(3)}$ can be found using (5.7) and (5.4) to be

$$g_n^{(3)} = O(n^{-1} e^{-2n\pi d/a})$$
 (5.9)

Because of the exponential behavior of $g_n^{(3)}$ the series appearing in (5.2) can be truncated at a finite value, say $n = N_3$.

An equation for $g_n^{(3)}$ can now be derived using property (ii) of section 2, Chapter 2 and (5.4), (5.7) and (5.9)

$$RES[T_{2}, \gamma_{na}] = \frac{-n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{o}}{a} A_{n}$$

$$= \frac{-n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{o}}{a} R_{n}^{-1} (K_{n}^{(3)})^{-1} g_{n}^{(3)}$$

$$= 1, 2, \cdots 143$$

Equations (5.10) together with the appropriately modified forms of (2.9) and (2.10) represent the necessary simultaneous equations for $g_n^{(1)}$, $g_n^{(2)}$ and $g_n^{(3)}$.

Note that we are considering only the conventional method of truncation.

6. The Scattered Fields

The previous sections have dealt with the formulation and solution of the MRCT equations for the perturbation coefficients. Upon finding the perturbation coefficients, we are able to evaluate the constructed meromorphic functions at the appropriate points in the complex plane and determine the scattered fields. This is done with the aid of the auxiliary geometry. Using the properties (viii) and (ix) of section 2, Chapter 2, we find the following TEM coefficients of the scattered fields for the unloaded trifurcated waveguide

$$B_{o,o} = -T_2(-jk_o)/(2jk_ob_o)$$
 (6.1)

$$B_{o,1} = -T_1(-jk_o)/(2jk_ob_1) + T_2(-jk_o)/(2jk_oc)$$
 (6.2)

$$B_{o,2} = T_1(-jk_o)/(2jk_ob_2) + T_2(-jk_o)/(2jk_oc)$$
 (6.3)

where $B_{0,n}$ (n = 0,1,2) is the amplitude of the reflected TEM mode in the waveguide of dimension b_n .

When only a single waveguide is excited with a TEM mode with an amplitude of unity, (6.1)-(6.3) represent either (current) reflection coefficients or (current) coupling coefficients. The reader is reminded that for TEM incidence from the largest guide the TEM solution is immediate, the solution being given by properties (viii) and (ix) of section 2, Chapter 2. Also, the TEM transmission coefficient to the larger waveguide is found immediately from repeated use of equation (2.5).

The complete scattered fields can be found with the aid of the auxiliary problem and the properties given in section 2, Chapter 2. For this dissertation, only the TEM modal amplitudes are of immediate interest.

For the case of the dielectric loaded trifurcated waveguide, the results are essentially the same as those already given except that we must add in the reflected TEM field from the dielectric. This yields

$$B_{o,o} = -T_2(-jk_o)/(2jk_ob_o) + R_oA_o$$
 (6.4)

$$B_{o,1} = -T_{1}(-jk_{o})/(2jk_{o}b_{1}) + T_{2}(-jk_{o})/(2jk_{o}c) + R_{o}A_{o}$$

$$B_{o,2} = T_{1}(-jk_{o})/(2jk_{o}b_{2}) + T_{2}(-jk_{o})/(2jk_{o}c) + R_{o}A_{o}$$
(6.5)

(6.6)

where R_0 is given by (5.5) and

$$A_0 = \frac{c}{a} c_0^+ + \frac{b_0}{a} B_{0,0}^{(0)}$$

and

$$C_{o}^{+} = \frac{b_{2}}{c} B_{o,2}^{(o)} + \frac{b_{1}}{c} B_{o,1}^{(o)}$$

This dissertation is only concerned with TEM incluence.

Other incident modes may be included in a direct manner

using the properties discussed in section 2, Chapter 2.

7. Numerical Results

7.1 Introduction

This section presents the numerical solution of the trifurcated waveguide as well as the dielectric loaded trifurcated waveguide. The computer programs were written in Fortran IV for a CDC 3800 computer with a 48K word memory. Since these programs were later extended to the N-furcated waveguide, only the more general programs are listed in Appendix G.

One interesting aspect of the numerical solution of the problems is the method used to evaluate the infinite product form $H(\omega)F(\omega)$ appearing in (2.14) of Chapter 2. The method is capable of giving results accurate to an arbitrary accuracy using only a small number of terms in the product plus some correction terms. For the data computed in this report, 50 terms were used in the evaluation of the infinite product for 5 place accuracy. The technique used is given in Appendix D.

The infinite oscillatory summations used in the construction of the meromorphic functions (see (3.10) and (3.11), for example) were summed numerically using a moving average. Less than 50 terms were generally necessary to yield 5 place accuracy.

7.2 The Trifurcated Waveguide

The practical solution of the trifurcated waveguide using the truncated equations requires two numerical considerations. We must decide how to choose the ratio of N_1/N_2 , and we must decide how large N_1 and N_2 must be for acceptable accuracy of the results.

A numerical study of the ratio, N_1/N_2 , revealed that the final result was independent of the ratio (as opposed to direct mode matching where the solution does depend on such ratios). It was thus convenient to choose $N_1 = N_2$.

The choice of how large N $_{\rm p}$ = N $_{\rm l}$ = N $_{\rm 2}$ must be for a given accuracy, depends on the geometry of the problem. Even for a given trifurcated waveguide we must decide how b $_{\rm 0}$ and b $_{\rm 2}$ are chosen, since switching b $_{\rm 0}$ and b $_{\rm 2}$ merely turns the waveguide upside down. Table 3.7.2.1 illustrates the TEM current reflection coefficient of an edge waveguide as a function of N $_{\rm p}$ = N $_{\rm 1}$ = N $_{\rm 2}$. This geometry was also considered by Pace and Mittra (1966) and their data is shown with N $_{\rm p}$ corresponding to the size of the scattering matrix used.

Table 3.7.2.1 Convergence Results for the Trifurcated Waveguide.

| Np | B* | 0,0 | B [†] | ,2 | B _{0,0} (| Pace) |
|----------------------------|---------|---|--|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1 2 3 4 6 8 | 0.32425 | 131.91° 131.91° 131.91° 131.91° 131.91° | 0.32427 0.32424 0.32424 0.32425 0.32425 0.32425 | 131.91° 131.93° 131.92° 131.91° 131.91° | 0.326 0.327 0.324 0.324 0.324 | 135 ° 137.0° 132.5° 137.5° 232.6° |

*
$$k_0 b_0 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0 b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_2 = 0.20033$

$$t_{0}b_{2} = 1.27046$$
, $k_{0}b_{1} = 0.41417$, $k_{0}b_{0} = 0.20033$

The above MRCT data was computed using the conventional method of truncation. Note that 5 place accuracy is achieved almost immediately. This is a definite improvement over the GSMT, although for many engineering applications the GSMT results are still quite acceptable. It is interesting to note that the reflection coefficient without the adjacent conducting plate is found from (2.13) to be 0.326 $\exp(132.6^{\circ})$. Note that B converges faster than B converges faster case corresponds to a larger coupling region dimension, c.

The reflection coefficient of the central waveguide of the above case is given in Table 3.7.2.2.

Table 3.7.2.2 Convergence Results for the Trifurcated Waveguide.

| N p | B | ر |
|----------|---------|---------|
| 1 | 0.74244 | 152.38° |
| 2 | 0.74244 | 152.37° |
| 3 | 0.74244 | 152.37° |
| <u>)</u> | 0.74244 | 152.37° |

^{*} $k_0 b_0 = 1.27046$, $k_0 b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_2 = 0.20033$

Again the convergence is extremely fast.

The above data was computed using the conventional method of truncation of the equations. The same data was computed using the asymptotic choice of the extra equations. This is shown in Table 3.7.2.3.

Table 3.7.2.3. Effect of the Choice of Truncation on the Convergence.

| N B B | ,0 | B † | ,2 | | |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 1 0.32418 2 0.32426 3 0.32426 4 0.32425 6 0.32425 | 131.93° 131.91° 131.91° 131.91° 131.91° | 0.32308 0.32406 0.32436 0.32438 0.32426 0.32424 | 132.35° 131.95° 131.90° 131.90° 131.91° 131.91° | 0.74296 0.74241 0.74242 0.74246 0.74244 0.74244 | 152.54° 152.36° 152.36° 152.38° 152.37° 152.37° |

*
$$k_0b_0 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0b_2 = 0.20033$

$$+ k_0 b_2 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0 b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_0 = 0.20033$

Five place accuracy is again acheived; however, this choice of the truncated equations does not appear to be quite as good as the conventional truncation choice. This is logical since we are truncating the equations at such small indices that the asymptotic value of the equations has not been reached.

As a further comparison with the above data, Table 3.7.2.4 gives the results of using direct truncation (i.e., no asymptotics).

Table 3.7.2.4 Convergence of Direct Truncation

| N p | В, | ,0 | В. | t 0,2 | B* | L |
|----------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 2 3 4 6 8 | 0.3233 0.3244 0.3244 0.3241 0.3243 0.3243 | 131.4° 132.0° 132.0° 131.8° 131.9° 131.9° | 0.3257 0.3245 0.3237 0.3237 0.3243 0.3244 | 135.3° 132.3° 131.5° 131.4° 131.9° 132.1° | 0.7394 0.7429 0.7428 0.7420 0.7425 0.7425 | 153.8° 152.6° 152.6° 152.3° |

*
$$k_0b_0 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0b_2 = 0.20033$

$$+ k_0 b_2 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0 b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_0 = 0.20033$

This solution does not explicitly satisfy both of the edge conditions; however, it does converge to the correct result just as the computations made by Pace and Mittra (1966) using the GSMT did. However, the convergence of both of these methods is much slower than either of the methods described which satisfy both edge conditions explicitly. It is also interesting to note that the direct truncation appears to converge faster than the GSMT solution. This is important to note since the MRCT solution without asymptotics can be applied as easily as the GSMT.

The data presented thus far has been for a waveguide junction which propagates only the TEM mode in any waveguide region. It is instructive to solve multimoded waveguide problems using the MRCT. Table 3.7.2.5 presents data for a case where two of the waveguides support the TM, mode in addition to the TEM mode.

Table 3.7.2.5 Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results of the Trifurcated Waveguide (Conventional Truncation)

| Np | B * | ,2 | B 0 | ,0 | B | ,1 |
|-----------|--------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 2 | 0.38296 0.38287 | 74.68° 74.75° | 0.31798 0.37277 | 75.03° 74.79° | 0.85180 0.85159 | 156.01° 155.99° |
| 3 4 | 0.38287 | 74.70° 74.67° | 0.38013 | 74.72° 74.68° | 0.85160 | 156.01° 156.02° |
| 6 | 0.38290 | 74.66° | 0.38321 | 74.65° | 0.85164 | 156.02° |
| 8 10 | 0.38289 | 74.66° 74.66° | 0.38320 | 74.65° | 0.85165 | 156.02° 156.02° |
| 12 * k | 0.38289 $b = 1.27$ | 74.66° | 0.38296 = 0.41417 | 74.66° | 0.85165 4.41205 | 156.02° |
| † k | $b_0 = 1.27$ | 046, k ₀ b ₁ | = 0.41417 | , hobo = | | |

The convergence is again quite fast and five place accuracy can be acheived. The convergence of the recession with the larger coupling dimension, c, is somewhat slower than in the single moded case because of the multimoding in the coupling region. Also the overmoded data represents more of a perturbation to the bifurcated solution since the magnitude of the reflection coefficient without the adjacent conducting plate is 0.4452 (from (2.13), Chapter 2).

Table 3.7.2.6 illustrates this same data using the asymptotic choice of the last equations.

Table 3.7.2.6 Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results of the Trifurcated Waveguide (Asymptotic Truncation)

| (Asymptotic Truncation) | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--------------------|
| N p | В о | ,2 | B 0 | , 2 | B* | ,1 |
| 1 | 0.38695 | 75.92° | 0.43375 | 74.52° | 0.83744 | 156.62° |
| 2 | 0.38310 | 74.83° | 0.40086 | 72.97° | 0.84925 | 156.15° |
| 3 | 0.38327 | 74.68° | 0.39194 | 71.82° | 0.85304 | 155.77° |
| li C | 0.38329 | 74.67° | 0.38780 | 73.65° | 0.85317 | 155.75° |
| 6 | 0.38288 | 74.660 | 0.38433 | 74.340 | 0.85172 | 156.02° |
| 8 | 0.38282 | 74.62° | 0.38317 | 74.770 | 0.85144 | 156.08° |
| 10 | 0.38290 | 74.67° | 0.38284 | 74.96° | 0.85164 | 156.02° 155.99° |
| 12 | 0.38296 | 74.68° | 0.38283 | 74.96° | 0.85173 | 100.99 |
| * k | ۲. | 046, k _o b ₁ | = 0.41417 | 0 0 | 4.41205 | |
| † k | b = 1.27 | 046 k b. | = 0.41417 | $, k b_0 =$ | 4.41205 | |

From the data it is clear that for larger waveguides the differences of the conventional and asymptotic truncation methods are amplified with the conventional truncation method apparently being better.

For a complete comparison of methods it is instructive to compute the multimoded data with direct truncation.

This is shown in Table 3.7.2.7.

Table 3.7.2.7 Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results of the Trifurcated Waveguide.

| (Direct | Truncation) |
|---------|-------------|
|---------|-------------|

| N P | В | * o,2 | B | 0,0 | . * B _o | <u>.</u> l |
|--|--|--|--|---|--|--|
| 1 2 3 4 6 8 10 12 | 0.3888 0.3835 0.3807 0.3806 0.3829 0.3836 0.3829 0.3825 | 75.5° 73.6° 73.5° 74.7° 75.0° 74.7° | 0.4447 0.4330 0.4167 0.4042 0.3889 0.3821 0.3797 0.3796 | 78.3° 77.4° 75.6° 74.3° 73.8° | 0.8482 0.8514 0.8518 0.8518 0.8517 0.8517 | 150.8° 155.4° 157.0° 157.1° 156.0° 155.7° 156.0° 156.2° |

*
$$k_0 b_2 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0 b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_0 = 4.41205$

$$t_{o}^{b} = 1.27046, k_{o}^{b} = 0.41417, k_{o}^{b} = 4.41205$$

Again the convergence of the direct truncation method is slower than either the conventional or asymptotic truncation methods.

The choice of recession giving the larger coupling region serves as a convenient comparison of all the truncation methods since the effects are magnified. Figure 3.7.2.1 illustrates graphically the convergence of the magnitude of the reflection coefficient B_{0,0} given in Tables 3.7.2.5 - 3.7.2.7. It is clear that both of the

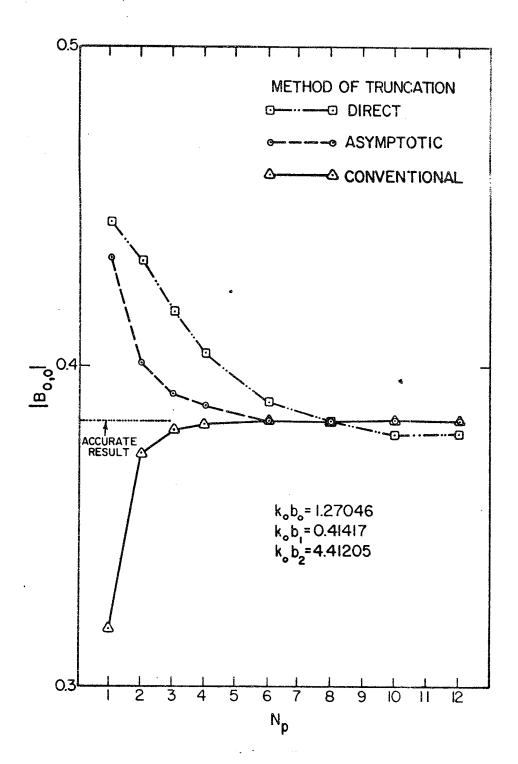


Fig. 3.7.2.1: Comparison of Methods of Truncation for the Trifurcated Waveguide.

methods which satisfy both of the edge conditions explicitly are superior to the direct truncation method, particularly for extremely accurate results. For some engineering applications, however, the direct truncation method is acceptable and will yield results more efficient than many more conventional methods. Figure 3.7.2.1 also illustrates that the conventional choice of the truncation method converges faster than the asymptotic choice of the truncation.

The discussion thus far has been limited to the convergence of various reflection coefficients. It is also interesting to examine some typical perturbation coefficients. Figure 3.7.2.2 illustrates the behavior of $g_n^{(1)}$ for the data of Table 3.7.2.1 for $N_p = 8$ and the calculation of $B_{0,0}$. It is quite clear that the asymptotic behavior given in (3.8) and (3.9) is quickly acheived.

7.3 The Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Waveguide

The dielectric loading of the trifurcated waveguide adds an additional numerical parameter, N_3 . It was generally convenient to choose $N_p = N_1 = N_2 = N_3$. However, since the perturbation coefficients due to the dielectric decay exponentially, N_3 can generally be chosen smaller than N_1 and N_2 .

Since there is no existing data for the dielectrically loaded trifurcated waveguide the following steps were taken to check the programming: (1) The dielectric was

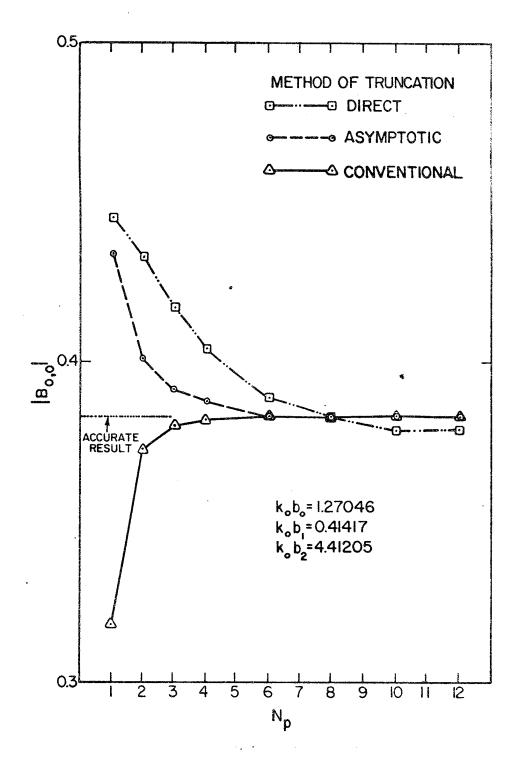


Fig. 3.7.2.1: Comparison of Methods of Truncation for the Trifurcated Waveguide.

methods which satisfy both of the edge conditions explicitly are superior to the direct truncation method, particularly for extremely accurate results. For some engineering applications, however, the direct truncation method is acceptable and will yield results more efficient than many more conventional methods. Figure 3.7.2.1 a so illustrates that the conventional choice of the truncation method converges faster than the asymptotic choice of the truncation truncation.

The discussion thus far has been limited to the convergence of various reflection coefficients. It is also interesting to examine some typical perturbation coefficients. Figure 3.7.2.2 illustrates the behavior of $g_n^{(1)}$ for the data of Table 3.7.2.1 for $N_p = 8$ and the calculation of $B_{o,o}$. It is quite clear that the asymptotic behavior given in (3.8) and (3.9) is quickly acheived.

7.3 The Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Waveguide

The dielectric loading of the trifurcated waveguide adds an additional numerical parameter, N $_3$. It was generally convenient to choose N $_p$ = N $_1$ = N $_2$ = N $_3$. However, since the perturbation coefficients due to the dielectric decay exponentially, N $_3$ can generally be chosen smaller than N $_1$ and N $_2$.

Since there is no existing data for the dielectrically loaded trifurcated waveguide the following steps were taken to check the programming: (1) The dielectric was

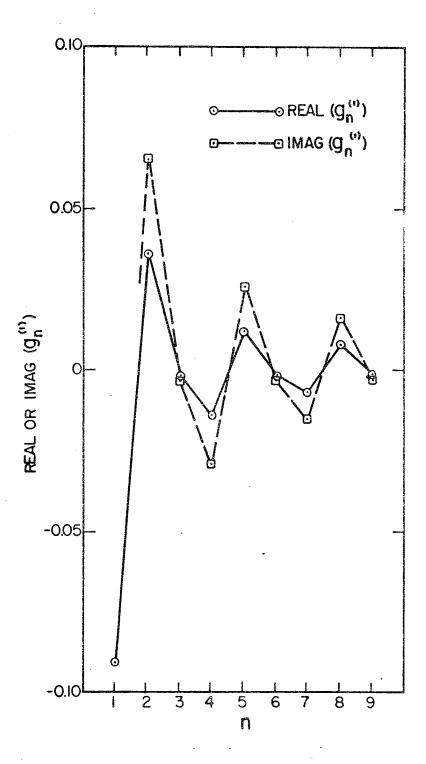


Fig. 3.7.2.2: Typical Perturbation Coefficients for the Trifurcated Waveguide.

combined with the unloaded trifurcated waveguide using only a TEM mode interaction. This was a particularly good check for large d or small ε_r . The data computed agreed with this data. (2) The results of interchanging boar by yielded the same results. This is an independent check of the new programming.

Table 3.7.3.1 illustrates the change of the data of Table 3.7.2.1 and 3.7.2.2 with the dielectric parameters, $k_0d=1.256,\; \epsilon_r=10,\; \text{and}\; \sigma/k_0=0.01.$

Table 3.7.3.1 Convergence Results for the Dielectrically Loaded Trifurcated Waveguide

| Np | Е | * 0,0 | B | ,1 |
|----|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| 1 | 0.52772 | 172.64° | 0.80422 | 158.83° |
| 2 | 0.52773 | 172.64° | 0.80421 | 158.82° |
| 3 | 0.52773 | 172.64° | 0.80420 | 158.82° |
| 4 | 0.52773 | 172.64° | 0.80420 | 158.82° |
| 6 | 0.52773 | 172.64° | 0.80420 | 158.82° |

* $k_0b_0 = 1.27046$, $k_0b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0b_2 = 0.20033$

The above data was computed using the conventional truncation method. The convergence is comparable to the trifurcated waveguide without dielectric loading. The recession corresponding to the larger coupling region yielded results comparable to the non-loaded waveguide junction.

The waveguides in the above example are single moded except for the dielectric region which supports two modes. Table 3.7.3.2 illustrates the change of the multimoded data of Table 3.7.2.5 due to the addition of dielectric material with the parameters $k_0d = 1.256$, $\epsilon_r = 10$, $\sigma/k_0 = 0.01$.

Table 3.7.3.2 Effect of Multimoding on the Convergence Results for the Dielectrically Loaded Tri-furcated Waveguide.

(Conventional Truncation)

| N q | В | * o,2 | В в | ,1 |
|-----|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| l | 0.15261 | 168.61° | 0.88923 | 160.27° |
| 2 | 0.14271 | 159.59° | 0.88667 | 160.10° |
| 3 | 0.14187 | 159.49° | 0.88517 | 159.96° |
| 4 | 0.14168 | 159.51° | 0.88521 | 159.96° |
| 6 | 0.14161 | 159.51° | 0.88523 | 159.96° |
| 8† | 0.14164 | 159.51° | 0.88522 | 159.96° |
| 10† | 0.14165 | 159.51° | 0.88521 | 159.96° |

*
$$k_0 b_0 = 4.41205$$
, $k_0 b_1 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_2 = 1.27046$
+ $N_3 = 6$

Again the convergence was comparable to the trifurcated waveguide without dielectric loading.

A comparison of the above data with that of section 7.2 illustrates the dramatic effect that dielectric loading can have on the reflection coefficients.

| • | | |
|---|---|---|
| | • | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | * |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Chapter 4: The N-Furcated Waveguide

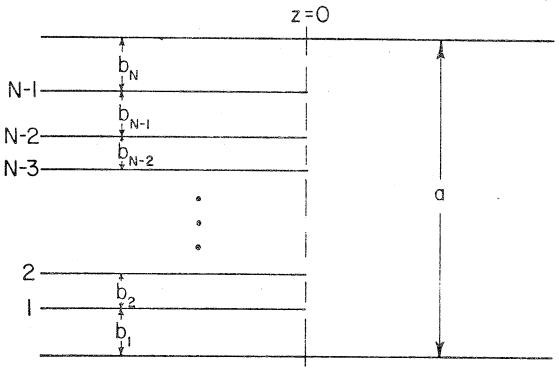
1. Introduction

This chapter presents the extension of the results of Chapter 3 to the more complicated case of the N-furcated waveguide and its modification due to dielectric loading. The N-furcated waveguide is a waveguide junction which has received little theoretical attention. The N-furcated waveguide junction can be used in the synthesis consisted ratios of higher order modes in multimoded waveguides. Also the N-furcated waveguide can be used as a closed region approximation to the reflection and coupling coefficients of a finite array of parallel plate waveguides. When a dissipative dielectric loading is present in the largest waveguide, the approximation of an open region solution can be even better, particularly when the dielectric is placed at small distances from the junction.

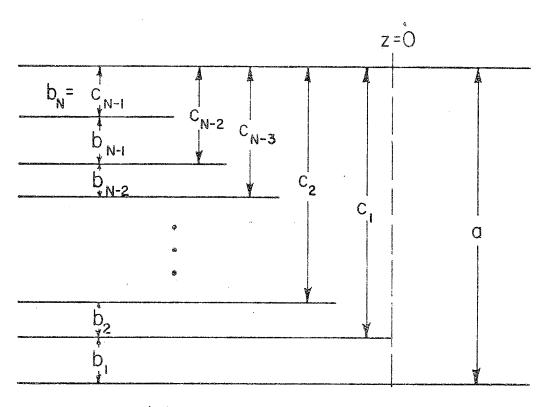
2. Formulation of the Equations

Figure 4.2.1 illustrates the N-furcated waveguide and its auxiliary geometry.

The solution to this problem is found by constructing N-1 meromorphic functions. The function associated with the first plate and the (N-1)th plate will only have a single perturbation sum, while the remaining plates will have functions with two perturbation sums. From the canonical solution these functions are readily written.



(a) N-Furcated Waveguide



(b) Auxiliary Geometry

Fig. 4.2.1: The N-Furcated Waveguide and the Auxiliary Problem.

$$T_{N-1}(\omega) = H_{N-1}(\omega)F_{N-1}(\omega) \left[K_0^{N-1} - (\omega - jk_0) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{N-1,R}}{\omega + \gamma_n, c_{N-2}}\right]$$

where it is understood that the appropriate geometrical factors for the (N-1)th junction are used in the canonical solution. It is convenient to introduce an additional superscript R to g_n which refers to the location of the perturbation, in this case to the right of the (N-1)th junction. Similarly,

$$T_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega)\left(K_{0}^{1}-(\omega-jk_{0})\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{g_{n}^{1},L}{\omega-\gamma_{n,c_{1}}}\right) \qquad (2.2)$$

where the superscript L of g_n indicates the perturbation is to the left of the lst junction. For the Mth junction between 1 and N-1 we have

$$T_{M}(\omega) = H_{M}(\omega)F_{M}(\omega)\left(K_{O}^{M}-(\omega-jk_{O})\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{M},R}{\omega+\gamma_{n,c_{M}-1}}\right\}\right)$$

$$+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{M},L}{\omega-\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}$$
(2.3)

Note that there are 2N-4 sets of unknown g_n 's.

The TEM normalization constants are given by

$$K_{\circ}^{N-1} H_{N-1}(jk_{\circ}) F_{N-1}(jk_{\circ}) = 2jk_{\circ} b_{N} \left(U_{\circ}^{N-2} - B_{\circ,N-1}^{(\circ)}\right) (2.4)$$

$$K_0^1 + (jk_0)F_1(jk_0) = 2jk_0 c_1 \left(U_0^0 - B_{0,1}^{(0)}\right)$$
 (2.5)

$$K_{O}^{M}H_{M}(jk_{O})F_{M}(jk_{O}) = 2jk_{O} c_{M}(U_{O}^{M-1}-B_{O,M}^{(O)})$$
 (2.6)

where U_0^m is the amplitude of the TEM mode incident from the left in the mth junction (refer to Figure 4.2.1 and the subscript of the c's). The U_0 's are given by the equations

$$U_{o}^{N-2} = \frac{b_{N}}{c_{N-2}} B_{o,N}^{(o)} + \frac{b_{N-1}}{c_{N-2}} B_{o,N-1}^{(o)}$$
 (2.7)

$$U_{o}^{M-1} = \frac{c_{M}}{c_{M-1}} U_{o}^{M} + \frac{b_{M}}{c_{M-1}} B_{o,M}^{(o)}$$
(2.5)

an d

$$U_{o}^{o} = \frac{c_{1}}{a} U_{o}^{1} + \frac{b_{1}}{a} B_{o,1}^{(o)}$$
 (2.9)

We have assumed TEM incidence from the waveguides to the left of the junction. The solution for the TEM scattered fields for TEM incidence from the largest waveguide is direct since no higher order modes are excited.

In order to derive equations for the perturbation coefficients, we again make use of the auxiliary geometry and insist that the expressions for the modal coefficients in the various coupling regions be consistent.

For the Mth plate we have in general coupling regions to the left and right of the plate truncation. From property (i) of section 2, Chapter 2, we have

$$g_n^{M,R} = K_n^{M,R} C_{n,M-1}^-$$
 (2.10)

where

$$K_{n}^{M,R} = \frac{-n\pi}{c_{M-1}} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{M}}{c_{M-1}} / [F_{M}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}) H_{M}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}) + jk_{0})]$$

$$(2.11)$$

Equations (2.10) and (2.11) are valid for $M = 2, \dots N-1$.

For the left perturbation coefficients we find from property (iii) of section 2, Chapter 2

$$g_n^{M,L} = K_n^{M,L} C_{n,M}^+$$
 (2.12)

where

$$K_{n}^{M,L} = -\gamma_{n,c_{M}}^{2} e_{M} / [F_{M}^{(n)}(\gamma_{n,c_{M}}) H_{M}(\gamma_{n,c_{M}}) (\gamma_{n,c_{M}} - Jk_{o})]$$
(2.3)

Equations (2.12) and (2.13) are valid for $M = 1, \dots, N-2$

From property (ii) of section 2, Chapter 2 mave for the Mth plate

RES[T_M,
$$\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}] = \frac{-n\pi}{c_{M-1}} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{M}}{c_{M-1}} [K_{n}^{M-1,L}]^{-1} g_{n}^{M-1,L}$$
(2.14)

where we have used (2.12). This equation is valid for $M = 2, \cdots, N-2$. Similarly, we use property (vi) of section 2, Chapter 2 and find

$$T_{M}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M}}) = \gamma_{n,c_{M}} c_{M}[K_{n}^{M+1,R}]^{-1} g_{n}^{M+1,R}$$
 (2.15)

Where we have used (2.10). This equation is valid for $M = 1, \dots, N-2$.

Equations (2.14) and (2.15) represent the desired simultaneous equations for the perturbation coefficients. Note that the end plates each contribute only one kind of equation, while the central plates each contribute both kinds of equations. Hence, we have 2N-4 sets of infinite equations for the 2N-4 sets of unknown right and left perturbation coefficients.

3. Asymptotics

In order to effectively truncate the equations for the N-furcated waveguide, we shall find the asymptotic behavior of the perturbation coefficients.

Using Mittra and Lee (1971), we can easily find the asymptotic behavior of $K_n^{M,\,\mathrm{R}}$ to be

$$K_n^{M,R} = 0 \left(n^{1/2} \sin \frac{n \pi b_M}{c_{M-1}} \right)$$

We can also find that

$$C_{n,M-1}^- = O(n^{-3/2})$$
 (3.2)

Hence

$$g_n^{M,R} = 0 \left(n^{-1} \sin \frac{n \pi b_M}{c_{M-1}} \right)$$
 (3.3)

This is in agreement with the results found for the trifurcated waveguide.

The results begin to deviate from the trifurcated waveguide at this point when finding the asymptotic behavior of the left perturbation coefficients. In order to illustrate this consider the case of M = 1. From (ii) of section 2, Chapter 2 we have

$$-A_n \frac{n\pi}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{a} = RES[T_1, \gamma_{na}]$$
 $n = 1, 2, \cdots$

Because of the concept of (3.3), the summation,

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{1,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n,c_1}}$$

of $T_1(\omega)$ must contribute <u>more than one</u> oscillatory term asymptotically in order to meet all of the edge conditions.

In particular, this sum must contribute the necessary terms to satisfy the edge condition of the plates: 2,3,...,N-1. This result can be arrived at by considering (2.12) and (2.13). From Mittra and Lee (1971), it is easy to show that $K_n^{M,L} = O(n^{1/2})$ and hence we need

$$c_{n,1}^{+} = o\left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{2}}{c_{1}}\right) + o\left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n\pi (b_{2}+b_{3})}{c_{1}}\right) + \cdots + o\left(n^{-3/2} \sin n\pi (b_{2}+b_{3}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{1}\right)$$
(3.4)

This result is obtained if we consider a sequential collapse of the recessed junctions. Figure 4.3.1 illustrates this concept. Hence we find in general

$$c_{n,M}^{+} = 0 \left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n \pi b_{M+1}}{c_{M}} \right) +$$

$$0 \left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n \pi (b_{M+1} + b_{M+2})}{c_{M}} \right) + \cdots$$

$$+ 0 \left(n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n \pi (b_{M+1} + b_{M+2} + \cdots + b_{N-1})}{c_{M}} \right).$$
(3.5)

Hence

$$g_{n}^{M,L} = \sum_{p=1}^{N-M-1} 0 \left\{ n^{-1} \sin \left(\frac{n\pi}{c_{M}} \sum_{m=M+1}^{M+p} b_{m} \right) \right\}$$
 (3.6)

for $M = 1, 2, \dots, N-2$. These multi term asymptotic forms are necessary so that <u>all</u> the edge conditions are satisfied explicitly.

The argument presented above for the multiterm asymptotic expansions of the left perturbation coefficients is not totally rigorous. This is because we are really

| Complementally and processes are according to the processes of the process | |
|--|----------|
| ACADIS AND STREET AND STREET S | |
| Challed Control of the Control of th | |
| | |
| Step i | Step 2 |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Step N-2 | Sten N-1 |
| Step N-2 | Step N-I |

Fig. 4.3.1: The Sequential Collapse of the N-Furcated Waveguide Junction.

only in a position to argue the multiterm expansion of $g_n^{l,L}$. The remaining expansions do not necessarily follow, although they do appeal to the intuition.

A rigorous justification of the remaining multipurm asymptotic expansions can however be presented. In order to do this, let us assume the existence of the expansions and then show that they are necessary to satisfy all the edge conditions. The procedure is to examine the leading asymptotic terms of (2.14). However, we must first consider the approximate forms of (2.1)-(2.3). Using (3.3) and (3.6) we have

$$T_{N-1}(\omega) \approx H_{N-1}(\omega) F_{N-1}(\omega) \left(K_0^{N-1} - (\omega - j k_0) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N-1, R} \frac{g_n^{N-1, R}}{\omega + \gamma_{n, c_{N-2}}} + \overline{g}^{N-1, R} \sum_{n=1+N-1, R}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n \pi b_{N-1}/c_{N-2}}{\omega + \gamma_{n, c_{N-2}}} \right\} \right)$$

$$(3.7)$$

and

$$T_{1}(\omega) \approx H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega) \left\{ K_{0}^{1} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \begin{cases} \sum_{n=1}^{N^{1}, L} \frac{g_{n}^{1}, L}{\omega - \gamma_{n}, c_{1}} \\ + \overline{g}_{1}^{1}, L \sum_{n=1+N^{1}, L}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\omega - \gamma_{n}, c_{1}} \end{cases}$$

$$+ \overline{g}_{2}^{1}, L \sum_{n=1+N^{1}, L}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1+N^{1}, L} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\pi (b_{2} + b_{3})/c_{1}}{\omega - \gamma_{n}, c_{1}}$$

$$+ \cdots + \overline{g}_{N-2}^{1}, L \sum_{n=1+N^{1}, L}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1+N^{1}, L} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\pi (b_{2} + b_{3} + \cdots + b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\omega - \gamma_{n}, c_{1}} \right\}$$

and for the central plates

$$T_{M}(\omega) \simeq H_{M}(\omega) F_{M}(\omega) \left\{ K_{O}^{M} - (\omega - j k_{O}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N^{M}, R} \frac{g_{n}^{M}, R}{\omega + \gamma_{n, c_{M-1}}} + \frac{g_{n}^{M}, L}{\omega + \gamma_{n, c_{M-1}}} + \frac{g_{n}^{M}, L}{\omega - \gamma_{n, c_{M-1}}} \right\} \right\}$$

$$+ \frac{1}{g_{N}^{M}, L} \sum_{n=1+N^{M}, L}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n \pi b_{M}/c_{M-1}}{\omega - \gamma_{n, c_{M}}} + \cdots$$

$$+ \frac{1}{g_{N-M-1}^{M}, L} \sum_{n=1+N^{M}, L}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n \pi (b_{M+1}/c_{M})}{\omega - \gamma_{n, c_{M}}} + \cdots$$

$$+ \frac{1}{g_{N-M-1}^{M}, L} \sum_{n=1+N^{M}, L}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n \pi (b_{M+1} + \cdots + b_{N})}{\omega - \gamma_{n, c_{M}}} + \cdots$$

$$+ \frac{1}{g_{N-M-1}^{M}, L} \sum_{n=1+N^{M}, L}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n \pi (b_{M+1} + \cdots + b_{N})}{\omega - \gamma_{n, c_{M}}} + \cdots$$

where N indicates the number of perturbation coefficients and the superscript refers to the appropriate coefficient. The notation for the asymptotic perturbation coefficients is obvious. However, note that since there is more than one left asymptotic perturbation coefficient in general there is a subscript to distinguish the various asymptotic terms of the same perturbation coefficient. Since there is always only one right perturbation coefficient, no subscript is necessary.

When examining the asymptotic expansions we will keep the constants associated with the expansions for reasons which will become obvious. Using Mittra and Lee (1971) and the results of Appendix C we may find that (2.14) degenerates into more than one equation because of the oscillatory terms of different arguments contributed by the summations. The first equation contributed by the non-oscillatory portion of the summations is of the form

$$P_{M} \left(K_{0}^{M} - \sum_{m=1}^{N} g_{m}^{M}, R - \overline{g}^{M}, R \sum_{m=1+N}^{\infty} M, R - \overline{g}^{M}, R \right) = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{m=1+N}^{M} M_{m} \left(K_{0}^{M} - \sum_{m=1}^{N} g_{m}^{M}, K - \overline{g}^{M}, K -$$

where

$$P_{M} = \sqrt{\frac{b_{M-1}}{b_{M} c_{M} c_{M-2}}}$$

The remaining equations are similar in form and are given by

$$P_{M} = \frac{-M}{g_{1}}, L = \frac{-M-1}{g_{2}}, L/c_{M-1}$$

$$\vdots$$

$$P_{M} = \frac{-M}{g_{N-M-1}}, L = \frac{-M-1}{g_{N-M}}, L/c_{M-1}$$
(3.11)

Equations (3.11) prove that multiterm asymptotic expansions are necessary for every left perturbation coefficient. If any of these coefficients are set to zero we see that (3.11) imply that other perturbation coefficients (which we know must be non-zero because of an edge condition) must be zero. Hence, the existence of the multiterm asymptotic expansions of the left perturbation coefficients is proved by contradiction.

Using (3.7)-(3.9) and Appendix C we can easily show that <u>all</u> of the edge conditions are explicitly satisfied just as was the case for the trifurcated waveguide.

4. Truncation of the Equations

The truncation of the equations for the N-furcated waveguide is more difficult than the trifurcated waveguide because of the asymptotic degeneracy of equation (2.14). Two basic choices of the truncation method are considered in this section.

The basic difference between methods is the choice of the extra equations for the asymptotic perturbation coefficients. Both of the methods use the following equations, which are obtained by using (3.7)-(3.9) in (2.14) and (2.15). For the first plate we obtain

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \overline{g_{1}^{1}},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{\frac{m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \overline{g_{2}^{1}},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{\frac{m^{-1} \sin m\pi (b_{2}+b_{3})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \cdots + \overline{g_{N-2}^{1},L} \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{\frac{m^{-1} \sin m\pi (b_{2}+b_{3}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + (\lambda_{n}^{1},R)^{-1} \gamma_{n,c_{1}}^{-1} c_{1} g_{n}^{2},R} = K_{0}^{1}/(\gamma_{n,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}) + \sum_{m=1,2,\cdots,N^{2},R}^{\infty} (1,2,2,\cdots,N^{2},R)^{2}$$

And for the central plates we obtain the following two sets of equations

$$(\lambda_{n}^{M,L})^{-1} \frac{n\pi}{c_{M-1}} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{M}}{c_{M-1}} g_{n}^{M-1,L} - \sum_{m=1}^{N^{M},R} \frac{g_{m}^{M,R}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M-1}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}}}$$

$$- \overline{g}^{M,R} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},R} \sum_{\gamma_{m,c_{M-1}}^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{M}/c_{M-1}}^{m-1} + \sum_{m=1}^{N^{M},L} \frac{g_{m}^{M,L}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}}}$$

$$+ \overline{g}_{1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \sum_{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{M+1}/c_{M}}^{m-1} \frac{g_{m}^{M,L}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}}}$$

$$+ \overline{g}_{2}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}}}$$

$$+ \cdots + \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{n,c_{M}}^{-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}}}$$

$$+ \cdots + \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{n,c_{M}}^{-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}}}$$

$$+ \cdots + \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{-\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}}$$

$$- \sum_{m=1}^{N^{M},L} \frac{g_{m}^{M,L}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}} - \overline{g}_{1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{M+1}/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}}$$

$$- \overline{g}_{N}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}}$$

$$- \cdots - \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}}$$

$$- \cdots - \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}}$$

$$- \cdots - \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{M+1}+b_{M+2})/c_{M}}{\gamma_{m,c_{M}}^{+\gamma_{n,c_{M}}}}$$

 $n = 1,2,\cdots,N^{M+1,R}$

Similarly, for the (N-1)th plate we obtain

$$(\lambda_{n}^{N-1}, L)^{-1} \frac{n\pi}{c_{N-2}} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{N-1}}{c_{N-2}} \varepsilon_{n}^{N-2}, L$$

$$- \sum_{m=1}^{N-1, R} \frac{g_{m}^{N-1}, R}{\gamma_{m, c_{N-2}} + \gamma_{n, c_{N-2}}} - \frac{\pi^{N-1}, R}{g_{m-1}^{N-1}, R} \sum_{m=1+N-1, R}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{N-1}/c_{N-2}}{\gamma_{m, c_{N-2}} + \gamma_{n, c_{N-2}}}$$

$$= - \frac{K_{0}^{N-1}}{(\gamma_{n, c_{N-2}} - jk_{0})} \qquad n = 1, 2, \dots, N^{N-2}, L$$

$$(1, 1, 1)$$

where

$$\lambda_{n}^{M,L} = -\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}^{2} c_{M-1} c_{M-1} \frac{\text{RES}[F_{M},\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}] H_{M}(\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}})}{F_{M-1}^{(n)}(\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}) H_{M-1}(\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}})}$$
(4.5)

$$\lambda_{n}^{M,R} = \frac{-n\pi}{c_{M}} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{M+1}}{c_{M}} \frac{F_{M}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M}})H_{M}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M}})}{F_{M+1}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M}})H_{M+1}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M}})}$$
(4.6)

The asymptotic choice of the last equations can be logically extended to the N-furcated waveguide. Proceeding in a similar manner to the trifurcated waveguide, we find the following asymptotic form for equation (4.1)

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} g_{m}^{1,L} + \overline{g}_{1}^{1,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1} + \cdots + m^{-1} \sin m\pi (b_{2}+b_{3}+\cdots + b_{N-1})/c_{1}$$

$$+ \pi Q_{1} \overline{g}^{2}, R = K_{0}^{1}$$

where

$$Q_{M} = -\sqrt{\frac{b_{M} c_{M}^{2}}{b_{M+1} c_{M-1} c_{M+1}}}$$

The asymptotic form of (4.2) has already been given in equations (3.10) and (3.11).

The asymptotic form of (4.3) is

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N^{M},R} g_{m}^{M,R} + \overline{g}^{M,R} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},R}^{\infty} m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{M}/c_{M-1}$$

$$+ \sum_{m=1}^{N^{M},L} g_{m}^{M,L} + \overline{g}_{1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L}^{\infty} m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{M+1}/c_{M}$$

$$+ \cdots + \overline{g}_{N-M-1}^{M,L} \sum_{m=1+N^{M},L}^{\infty} m^{-1} \sin m (b_{M+1} + \cdots + b_{N})/c_{M}$$

$$+ \pi Q_{M} \overline{g}^{M+1,R} = K_{0}^{M} (4.8)$$

Similarly, the asymptotic form of (4.4) is

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N^{N-1},R} g_{m}^{N-1,R} + \overline{g}^{N-1}, R \sum_{m=1+N^{N-1},R}^{\infty} m^{-1} \sin m\pi b_{N-1}/c_{N-2} + \frac{\pi}{c_{N-2}} P_{N-1} \overline{g}_{1}^{N-2}, L = K_{0}^{N-1}$$
(4.9)

and P_{N-1} was given in conjunction with (3.10).

The conventional choice of the truncation as mentioned for the trifurcated waveguide is apparently not possible in the case of the N-furcated waveguide because of the asymptotic degeneracy of (2.14). Any choice other than the asymptotic choice for the extra equations associated with (2.14) will apparently lead to numerical instabilities. Hence, we will use a hybrid choice. That is, we will use the asymptotic equations for the extra equations associated

with (4.2), but, we will use the equations obtained by using the next index for (4.1), (4.3) and (4.4). In the case of N=3, we will have the conventional truncation scheme. However, for N greater than 3 we will have a vehybrid choice.

Of course, one other truncation is also possible -direct truncation. As in the case of the trifurcated
waveguide, this solution will not explicitly satisfy and
of the edge conditions. However, for many applies and
the solution may be adequate and even better than many
other more conventional methods of solution.

5. Dielectric Loading

The dielectrically loaded N-furcated waveguide is shown in Figure 4.5.1. The modification of the N-furcated solution to account for the dielectric is similar to the modification of the trifurcated waveguide given in Chapter 3. Only the results will be given. $T_{\gamma}(\omega)$ becomes

$$T_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega) \left\{ K_{0}^{1} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{1,R}}{\omega + \gamma_{n,a}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{1,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n,c_{1}}} \right\} \right\}$$
Again $g_{n}^{1,R}$ is asymptotically given by
$$g_{n}^{1,R} = O(n^{-1} e^{-2\pi nd/a}) \qquad (5.2)$$

Using the truncated form of (5.1), (4.1) is modified to be

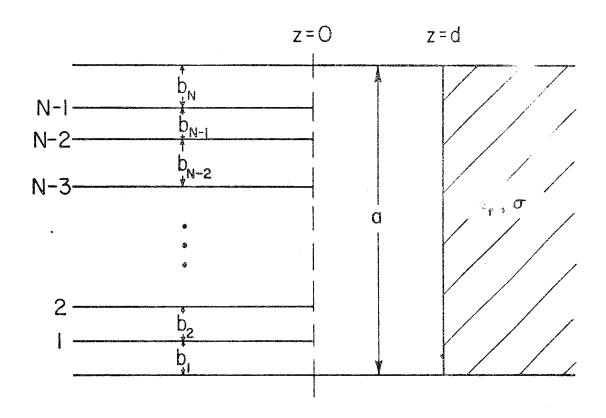


Fig. 4.5.1: Dielectrically Loaded N-Furcated Waveguide.

$$-\sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},R} \frac{g_{m}^{1},R}{\gamma_{m,a}^{-\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} - \overline{g}^{1},R \sum_{m=1+N^{1},R}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}e^{-2m\pi d/a}}{\gamma_{m,a}^{-\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \cdots + \overline{g}^{1}_{N-2} \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+b_{3}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + (\lambda_{n}^{1},R)^{-1} \gamma_{n,c_{1}}^{2} + \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+b_{3}+\cdots+b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}^{+\gamma_{n},c_{1}}} + \sum_{$$

Due to the introduction of $\mathbf{g}_n^{1,R}$, the following equations must be included in the solution

$$\sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},R} \frac{g_{m}^{1},R}{\gamma_{m,a}+\gamma_{n,a}} + \overline{g}^{1},R \sum_{m=1+N^{1},R}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}e^{-2m\pi d/a}}{\gamma_{m,a}+\gamma_{n,a}}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} - \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}}$$

$$- \cdots - \overline{g}^{1}_{N-2} \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+\cdots +b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$= 1,2,\cdots,N^{1},R$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} - \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} - \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} - \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1}^{N^{1},L} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} - \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi b_{2}/c_{1}}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{g_{m}^{1},L}{\gamma_{m,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} - \overline{g}^{1}_{1},L \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+\cdots +b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+\cdots +b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{n,c_{1}}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+\cdots +b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{\gamma_{n,a}-\gamma_{n,a}} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+\cdots +b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})}$$

$$+ \lambda_{n}^{a} g_{n}^{1},R - \sum_{m=1+N^{1},L}^{\infty} \frac{m^{-1}\sin m\pi (b_{2}+\cdots +b_{N-1})/c_{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0})} = \frac{K_{0}^{1}}{(\gamma_{n,a}-jk_{0$$

It should be noted that the infinite sum involving the asymptotic form of $\mathbf{g}_n^{1,R}$ is not necessary and could be omitted.

For the dielectrically loaded N-furcated waveguide we are only considering the case of the hybrid choice of the truncation.

6. The Scattered Fields

The previous sections have dealt with the formulation and solution of the MRCT equations for the perturbation coefficients. Upon finding the perturbation coefficients, we are able to evaluate the constructed meromorphic functions at the appropriate points in the complex plane and determine the scattered fields. This is done with the aid of the auxiliary geometry.

Using the properties of section 2, Chapter 2, we find the following TEM modal coefficients of the scattered fields for the N-furcated waveguide.

$$B_{0,1} = \frac{-T_1(-jk_0)}{2jk_0b_1}$$
 (6.1)

$$B_{o,M} = \frac{-T_{m}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}b_{M}} + \sum_{n=1}^{M-1} \frac{T_{n}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}c_{n}} \qquad M = 2, \cdots, N-1$$
(6.2)

an d

$$B_{o,N} = \frac{T_{N-1}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}c_{N-1}} + \sum_{n=1}^{N-2} \frac{T_{n}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}c_{n}}$$
(6.3)

When only a single waveguide is excited with an amplitude of unity, (6.1)-(6.3) represent either (current) reflection coefficients or (current) coupling coefficients. The reader is reminded that for TEM incidence from the largest waveguide the TEM solution is immediate.

For the purpose of this dissertation, only the TEM modal coefficients are desired. Other higher order modal coefficients can be calculated using the auxiliary geometry and the properties of section 2, Chapter 2.

For the case of the dielectrically loaded N-furcated waveguide, the results are essentially the same as those given above, except we must add in the TEM reflected field from the dielectric. This yields

$$B_{o,1} = \frac{-T_1(-jk_0)}{2jk_0b_1} + U_o^o R_o$$
 (6.4)

$$B_{o,M} = \frac{-T_{M}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}b_{M}} + \sum_{n=1}^{M-1} \frac{T_{n}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}c_{n}} + U_{o}^{o} R_{o}; M = 2, \dots N-1$$
(6.5)

$$B_{o,N} = \frac{T_{N-1}(-jk_o)}{2jk_o c_{N-1}} + \sum_{n=1}^{N-2} \frac{T_n(-jk_o)}{2jk_o c_n} + U_o^o R_o$$
 (6.6)

where U_0^0 is given by (2.9).

7. Numerical Results

7.1 Introduction

This section presents the numerical solution of the N-furcated waveguide as well as the dielectrically loaded N-furcated waveguide. The computer programs are listed in Appendix G. The programs were written in Fortran IV for a CDC 3800 computer with a 48K word memory. Only the programs for the hybrid truncation method are given.

7.2 The N-Furcated Waveguide

Since there is no existing data for an N-furcated waveguide, the following steps were indicative of the validity of the results: (1) The results agreed with the

trifurcated waveguide for N = 3. (2) Reversing the order of b₁, b₂···,b_N, yielded the same results. (3) The bifurcated waveguide with a magnetic wall was solved similar to the solution given in section 2, Chapter 2. This calution is given in Appendix E. This canonical solution was used to solve a trifurcated waveguide with a magnetic wall (ref. Appendix F). This solution was then combined with the solution given in Chapter 3 to yield results for symmetric N-furcated waveguide with N = 5. The results were in agreement giving a simultaneous check of the magnetic wall trifurcated waveguide program and the N-furcated waveguide program and the N-furcated waveguide simultaneously, we can simulate a trifurcated waveguide with a magnetic or electric wall. These results also agreed.

Table 4.7.2.1 illustrates the convergence for a case with N=5. In this example a convenient choice of the number of perturbation coefficients was $N^{R,M} \equiv N^{L,M} \equiv N_p$.

Table 4.7.2.1 Convergence Results for the N-furcated Waveguide (Hybrid Truncation)

| $\frac{N}{p}$ | B* | ,2 | B * | 4 | <u>r</u> 2- | 14 | T 4. | -2 |
|---------------------------------|--|--|---|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | 0.830 0.838 0.842 0.842 0.840 0.838 0.836 0.834 | 155° 155° 155° 155° 155° 155° 155° | 0.832 0.835 0.835 0.836 0.835 0.834 0.835 | 155° 155° 155° 155° 155° 155° 155° | 0.101 0.099 0.098 0.097 0.098 0.098 0.099 | -5° -4° -4° -4° -5° | 0.111 0.105 0.098 0.098 0.102 0.103 0.100 0.098 | -1° -10° -10° |

^{*} $k_0b_1=k_0b_5=1.27046$, $k_0b_2=k_0b_4=0.41417$, $k_0b_3=0.40066$.

 $⁺T_{2-4}=B_{0,4}$ with $B_{0,2}^{(0)}=1$, $T_{4-2}=B_{0,2}$ with $B_{0,4}^{(0)}=1$.

By the symmetry of the geometry $B_{0.2}=B_{0.4}$ and $T_{2-4}=T_{4-2}$. However, because of the larger coupling region associated with the second plate, the calculations are more accurate for the fourth plate and hence $B_{\text{0.4}}$ and $T_{\text{2-4}}$ are more accurate. This difference is more evident from an examination of the coupling coefficients. For inaccuracies less than a percent, convergence is essentially acheived for N_n greater than 5. In order to calculate all of the TEM scattering parameters to the same accuracy, one can choose the number of the perturbation coefficients to have a gradient, with the larger coupling region having more coefficients. As an example for $N^{1,L} = N^{2,R} = 10$, $N^2, L = N^3, R = 6$, and $N^3, L = N^4, R = 3$, we calculate the following results for the example given in Table 4.7.2.1 $B_{0,2} = 0.833 \ 155^{\circ}, B_{0,4} = 0.835 \ 155^{\circ}, T_{2-4} = 0.099 \ -5^{\circ}$ $T_{4-2} = 0.099 - 5^{\circ}$

The symmetry is obvious.

The above data is for the hybrid truncation method. Table 4.7.2.2 illustrates this same data for the asymptotic choice of the truncation.

Table 4.7.2.2 Convergence Results for the N-Furcated Waveguide (Asymptotic Truncation)

| N p | B** | | B* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * | | T [†] 2- | T [†] 2-4 | | T [†] 4 – 2 | |
|---------|----------------|--------------|--|--------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------|----------------------|--|
| 3 4 | 0.838 | | 0.831 | 155° 155° | 0.094 | - | | | |
| 5 | 0.834 | 156° | 0.835 | 155° | 0.093 0.100 | _4° | 0.105 | | |
| 6 7 | 0.834 0.834 | 156° 156° | 0.835 0.834 | 155° 155° | 0.102 | -7° | 0.098 | | |
| 8 | 0.834 | 155° | 0.833 | 155° | 0.098 0.097 | -3° -1° | 0.101 | -3° | |
| 9 10 | 0.835 0.835 | 155° 155° | 0.834 0.835 | 155° 155° | 0.098 0.100 | -4° -6° | 0.100 | -4° -5° | |

^{*} $k_0 b_1 = k_0 b_5 = 1.27046$, $k_0 b_2 = k_0 b_4 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_3 = 0.40066$. + $T_{2-1} = B_0$ with $B_{0.2}^{(0)} = 1$, $T_{4-2} = B_{0.2}$ with $B_{0.4}^{(0)} = 1$.

A comparison of the coupling coefficients with those of Table 4.7.2.1 clearly shows that the hybrid choice is again superior.

As a final comparison, let us compute this same lata using direct truncation. This is shown in Table 4.7.2.3.

Table 4.7.2.3 Convergence Results for the N-furcesed Waveguide (Direct Truncation)

| N p | B* 0,2 | | B°,4 | | T [†] 2-4 | | Thus | |
|--------|--------|------|-------|------|--------------------|-----------------|-------|--------|
| 3 | 0.836 | 1540 | 0.832 | 156° | 0.111 | - | 0 111 | 9° |
| 4 | 0.832 | 155° | 0.827 | 156° | 0.102 | 0° | 0 3 | 0 0 |
| 5 | 0.832 | 156° | 0.831 | 155° | 0.097 | -11° | 0.097 | -11° |
| 6 | 0.832 | 156° | 0.834 | 155° | 0.096 | -11° | 0.096 | -11° |
| 7 | 0.833 | 156° | 0.835 | 155° | 0.099 | -5° | 0.099 | ÷5° |
| 8 | 0.834 | 155° | 0.834 | 155° | 0.101 | -2° | 0.101 | -2° |
| 9 | 0.836 | 155° | 0.835 | 155° | 0.100 | - 3° | 0.100 | -3° |
| 10 | 0.836 | 155° | 0.835 | 155° | 0.099 | - 5° | 0.099 | ~5° |
| 11 | 0.835 | 155° | 0.835 | 155° | 0.100 | -40 | 0.100 | ~ Jt 0 |

^{*} $k_0b_1=k_0b_5=1.27046$, $k_0b_2=k_0b_4=0.41417$, $k_0b_3=0.40066$. + $T_{2-4}=B_{0,4}$ with $B_{0,2}^{(0)}=1$, $T_{4-2}=B_{0,2}$ with $B_{0,4}^{(0)}=1$.

It is interesting to note the symmetry of the coupling coefficients in the above table. This is apparently due to the symmetry of the equations. A comparison of the direct truncation method with the asymptotic method of truncation shows that the convergence of the data computed from the larger coupling region function is about the same. However, a comparison of the data computed from the smaller coupling region shows that we can apparently order the methods of truncation (with the best method first) as follows: (1) hybrid, (2) asymptotic, and (3) direct. This is the same conclusion arrived at for the trifurcated waveguide.

It should be noted that the above example is the same as the first trifurcated example treated in Chapter 3, except the waveguide has been folded about a symmetry plane. This allows us to ascertain the accuracy of th N-furcated results by exciting the waveguides in a symmetrical manner so as to simulate an electric symmetry wall and hence a trifurcated waveguide. Exciting the 2nd and 4th waveguide with unit amplitude we find

$$B_{0,4} = 0.835 \exp(155^{\circ}) + 0.099 \exp(-5^{\circ})$$
 $B_{0,4} = 0.743 \exp(152^{\circ})$

This is compared with the value $0.742 \exp(152^{\circ})$ given in Chapter 3, which is very good indeed.

Similarly, exciting the 1st and 5th waveguides with unit amplitude we find

$$B_{0,5} = 0.168 \exp(92^{\circ}) + 0.223 \exp(161^{\circ})$$
 $B_{0,5} = 0.324 \exp(132^{\circ})$

This is compared with the value $0.324 \exp(132^{\circ})$ given in Chapter 3. Hence, three place accuracy is clearly obtained.

7.3 The Dielectrically Loaded N-Furcated Waveguide

Since no existing data is available for the dielec
trically loaded N-furcated waveguide, checks similar to

those described for the N-furcated waveguide were performed.

Table 4.7.3.1 illustrates the change of the data of Table 4.7.2.1 with the inclusion of dielectric loading with the parameters: $k_0d = 1.256$, $\epsilon_r = 10$, $\sigma/k_0 = 0.01$.

Table 4.7.3.1 Convergence Results for the Dielectrically Loaded N-Furcated Waveguide (Hybrid Truncation)

| Np | B*o,2 | | B*,4 | | T + 2-4 | | T [‡] | |
|-----|---------------|------|---------------|------|---------|------|----------------|-------|
| 1 | 0.815 | 153° | 0.875 | 158° | 0.098 | -23° | 0.061 | -122° |
| 2 | 0.839 | 156° | 0.870 | 159° | 0.066 | -28° | 0.043 | -19° |
| 3 | 0.85 7 | 158° | 0.860 | 158° | 0.061 | -27° | 0.06 | - 4° |
| 14 | 0.866 | 159° | 0.859 | 158° | 0.059 | -27° | 0.062 | -18° |
| 5 | 0.870 | 159° | 0.863 | 158° | 0.057 | -27° | 0.062 | -36° |
| 6 | 0.870 | 159° | 0.864 | 158° | 0.057 | -27° | 0.062 | -36° |
| 7† | 0.868 | 159° | 0.863 | 158° | 0.057 | -27° | 0.061 | -56° |
| 8† | 0.866 | 159° | 0.862 | 158° | 0.058 | -27° | 0.061 | :20 |
| 9† | 0.864 | 158° | 0. 862 | 158° | 0.059 | -27° | 0.059 | -26° |
| 10† | 0.862 | 158° | 0.863 | 158° | 0.059 | -27° | 0 058 | -29° |

*
$$k_0 b_1 = k_0 b_5 = 1.27046$$
, $k_0 b_2 = k_0 b_4 = 0.41417$, $k_0 b_3 = 0.40066$.
+ $N^{1,R} = 6$.

$$+T_{2-4}=B_{0,4}$$
 with $B_{0,2}^{(0)}=1$, $T_{4-2}=B_{0,2}$ with $B_{0,4}^{(0)}=1$.

As with the unloaded N-furcated waveguide, the results for the smaller coupling region again exhibit better convergence. In order to ascertain the accuracy of the results, we can again simulate an electric symmetry wall at x = a/2 by exciting the waveguides appropriately. Exciting the 2nd and 4th waveguides with unit amplitude we have

$$B_{0,4} = 0.863 \exp(158^{\circ}) + 0.059 \exp(-27^{\circ})$$
 $B_{0,4} = 0.804 \exp(159^{\circ})$

This compares with the value $0.804~\exp(159^{\circ})$ obtained in Chapter 3.

Similarly, exciting the 1st and 5th waveguides with unit amplitude we have

$$B_{0,5} = 0.149 \exp(-158^{\circ}) + 0.404 \exp(162^{\circ})$$
 $B_{0,5} = 0.527 \exp(173^{\circ})$

This compares to the value 0.528 exp(173°) obtained in Chapter 3. Thus three place accuracy is again obtained.

1. Introduction

This chapter considers the application of the MRCT to four additional problems in order to illustrate the ease of applying the method to various kinds of problems. For example, the problem of finding the eigenvalues of a single ridged waveguide is outlined.

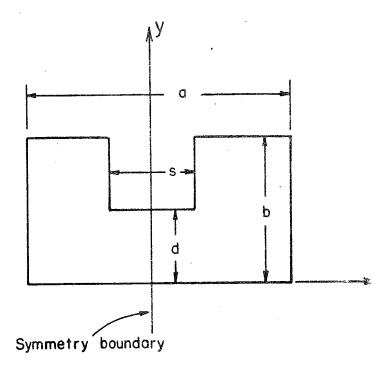
Another problem discussed is the scattering by a dielectric step. This problem has been solved by Royer and Mittra (1972). However, it is believed the solution outlined would be easier to derive than Royer's.

Another problem considered is the variation of the reflection coefficient of a rectangular waveguide with a change in the permittivity and conductivity of the dielectric loading. Numerical results are given.

2. TE Eigenvalues of Ridged Waveguide

Figure 5.2.1 illustrates a cross sectional view of a single ridged waveguide as well as the associated auxiliary problem. (The dimensions have been changed from those of Chapter 2 in order to conform with standard notation used with ridged waveguide.) The basic difference of this problem in comparison with problems solved previously is that there are no sources. The problem is homogeneous.

| | | 1 | | |
|--|---|---|--|---|
| | | | | |
| | | | | * |
| | | | | |
| | | | | • |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | • |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | ٠ |
| | | | | |
| | · | | | • |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |



(a) Ridged Waveguide Geometry

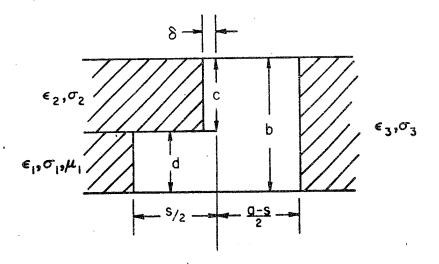


Fig. 5.2.1; Ridged Waveguide

(b) Auxiliary Problem

Montgomery (1971) illustrates how the transverse resonance argument is applied to the ridged waveguide eigenvalue problem. In order to find the dominant TF, mode eigenvalue, we must make the boundary condition at the symmetry wall of the magnetic type. In this formulation, we must then make the reflection coefficient as the first dielectric -1. This implies $\mu_1 \rightarrow \infty$. For the boundaries at x = a/2 and x = s/2 to be electric conductors the reflection coefficients must be +1 to the limit for the auxiliary problem solution to approach the desired solutions.

The solution essentially proceeds as that of the E-plane step given in Chapter 2, except that $T(\omega)$ must have two additional terms. From Chapter 2, we have

$$T(\omega) = H(\omega)F(\omega) \left\{ K_{o} - (\omega - jk_{o}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{d}}{\omega + \gamma_{nb}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{d}}{\omega - \gamma_{nd}} \right\} \right\}$$

$$(2.1)$$

From Chapter 2, section 3, we can easily find that

$$g_n^c = 0(n^{-7/6})$$

in the limit as $\epsilon_2 \to \infty$. Since g_n^b and g_n^d decay exponentially we can truncate these series without any loss of generality. Hence we can write

$$T(\omega) \simeq H(\omega)F(\omega) \left\{ K_{o} - (\omega - jk_{o}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N_{c}} \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} + \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\sum_{n=1}^{N_{c}} \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}} + \sum_{n=1}^{N_{c}} \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\omega + \gamma_{nb}} + \sum_{n=1}^{N_{c}} \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\omega - \gamma_{nd}} + \sum_{n=1}^{N_{c}} \frac{g_{n}^{c}}{\omega - \gamma_{nb}} \right\}$$

$$+ \sum_{n=1}^{N_{c}} \frac{g_{n}^{d}}{\omega - \gamma_{nd}} \right\}$$
(2.67)

Again from Chapter 2, section 3 we find that

$$K_{o} - \sum_{n=1}^{N} c g_{n}^{c} - \overline{g}^{c} \sum_{n=1+N_{c}}^{\infty} n^{-7/6} - \sum_{n=1}^{N} b g_{n}^{b}$$

$$- \sum_{n=1}^{N} d g_{n}^{d} = 0.$$
 (2.3)

In order to arrive at the additional equations, we require that the modal coefficients be consistent in the various region. From Chapter 2, we have the following equations,

RES[T,
$$-\gamma_{nb}$$
] = $-B_n^{(e)} \frac{n\pi}{b} \sin \frac{n\pi d}{b}$ (2.4a)

RES[T,
$$\gamma_{nb}$$
] = $-B_n \frac{n\pi}{b} \sin \frac{n\pi d}{b}$ (2.4b)

where $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots, b$, and where $B_n^{(o)}$ is the coefficient of the nth mode incident on the junction from the region with dimension, b. B_n is similarly the nth modal coefficient away from the junction in the region with dimension, b. But from the boundary condition at x = a/2 we must have

$$\frac{B_n^{(o)}}{B_n} = e^{-2(a-s)\gamma_{nb}}.$$
 (2.5)

Combining (2.4) and (2.5) we have that

$$RES[T, -\gamma_{nb}] = e^{-(a-s)\gamma_{nb}} RES[T, \gamma_{nb}]$$
 (2.6)

Similarly for the region with dimension, d, we have

$$T(\gamma_{nd}) = (-1)^n \gamma_{nd} d D_n^{(o)}$$
 (2.7a)

$$T(-\gamma_{nd}) = (-1)^{n+1} \gamma_{nd} d D_n \qquad (2.7b)$$

where $n = 1, 2, \dots, N_d$. But from the magnetic symmetry condition at x = 0 we have that

$$\frac{D_{n}^{(o)}}{D_{n}} = -e^{-s\gamma_{nd}}$$
 (2.8)

Hence, combining (2.7) and (2.8) we have that

$$T(\gamma_{nd}) = e^{-s\gamma_{nd}} T(-\gamma_{nd})$$
 (2.9)

Equations (2.6) and (2.9) express the interaction of the higher order modes with the boundaries at x = a/2 and s/2.

Similarly, we can easily find

$$T(\gamma_{nc}) = -C_n^{(o)} \gamma_{nc} C \qquad (2.10a)$$

$$T(-\gamma_{nc}) = C_n \gamma_{nc} C \qquad (2.10b)$$

but from the boundary condition at the conductor we have

$$c_n = c_n^{(o)} \tag{2.11}$$

Hence,

$$T(\gamma_{nc}) = -T(-\gamma_{nc}) \qquad (2.12)$$

One should note that this equation has the most pronounced effect on the solution since this equation accounts for the change in the edge condition. Equations (2.6) and (2.9) account for higher order mode interaction with the edge conductor and the ridge symmetry plane. But since these modes decay exponentially, the effect is not generally great. This can also be seen from (2.6) and (2.9).

As $n \to \infty$, we have that g_n^d , $g_n^b \to 0$, exponentially. However these coefficients do become important in the calculation of higher order mode eigenvalues.

For the first few eigenvalues, generally all the higher order modes are cut off except for the TEM to $\mathbf x$ mode. Hence, let us concentrate on the TEM equations.

From Chapter 2, we have

$$B_{o} = \frac{c}{b} C_{o}^{(o)} + \frac{d}{b} D_{c}^{(o)}$$

$$T(jk_{o}) = 2jk_{o}c (B_{o} - C_{o}^{(o)})$$

$$T(-jk_{o}) = 2jk_{o}c (C_{o} - B_{o}^{(o)})$$

$$T(-jk_{o}) = -2jk_{o}d (D_{o} - B_{o}^{(o)})$$

$$(2.13c)$$

From these equations, we can arrive at the following equations

$$B_{o} = 0 + \frac{d}{b} D_{o}^{(o)} + \frac{c}{b} C_{o}^{(o)}$$

$$D_{o} = B_{o}^{(o)} - \frac{c}{b} \frac{T(-jk_{o})}{T(jk_{o})} D_{o}^{(o)} + \frac{c}{b} \frac{T(-jk_{o})}{T(jk_{o})} C_{o}^{(o)}$$

$$C_{o} = B_{o}^{(o)} + \frac{d}{b} \frac{T(-jk_{o})}{T(jk_{o})} D_{o}^{(o)} - \frac{d}{b} \frac{T(-jk_{o})}{T(jk_{o})} C_{o}^{(o)}$$
(2.14a)

These equations can also be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix}
B_{o} \\
D_{o} \\
C_{o}
\end{pmatrix} = [Q] \begin{pmatrix}
B_{o}^{(o)} \\
D_{o}^{(o)} \\
C_{o}^{(o)}
\end{pmatrix} (2.15)$$

However, from the boundary conditions we have

$$\begin{pmatrix}
B_{0}^{(o)} \\
D_{0}^{(o)} \\
C_{0}^{(o)}
\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}
e^{-jk}_{0}(a-s) \\
0 & -jk_{0}s \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix}
B_{0} \\
D_{0} \\
C_{0}
\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}
B_{0}^{(o)} \\
D_{0}^{(o)} \\
C_{0}^{(o)}
\end{pmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
W
\end{bmatrix} \begin{pmatrix}
B_{0} \\
D_{0} \\
C_{0}
\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}
C_{0}^{(o)} \\
C_{0}^{(o)}
\end{pmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
W
\end{bmatrix} \begin{pmatrix}
C_{0} \\
C_{0}
\end{pmatrix}$$

$$(2.16)$$

Thus using (2.16) in (2.15)

$$\left\{ [I] = [Q][W] \right\} \begin{pmatrix} B_{\circ} \\ D_{\circ} \\ C_{\circ} \end{pmatrix} = [O] \qquad (2.17)$$

where [I] is the unit diagonal matrix. For a solution to exist, we must have

$$det = \{[I] - [Q][W]\} = 0.$$
 (2.18)

In essence, this is the equation for K_o . The complete solution to the problem is then found from equations (2.18), (2.12), (2.9) and (2.6). Note that all of these equations are homogeneous. Hence, a solution exists only if the determinant of the associated matrix of coefficients is zero. The eigenvalues are found by finding the values of k_o for which this is true. The associated eigenvectors (arbitrarily normalized) are found by recourse to (2.4), (2.7), (2.10) and (2.14).

This section has thus outlined the solution of an eigenvalue problem using the MRCT. This solution should prove to be beneficial when accurate higher order eigenvalues are desired. Additionally, the dominant eigenvalues can be found from the zeroes of the determinant of a small matrix because of the efficient truncation due to the use of the asymptotics of the unknowns.

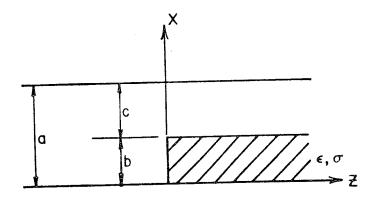
3. Scattering by a Dielectric Step

Royer and Mittra (1972) have considered the solution of the scattering by a dielectric step using the MRCT.

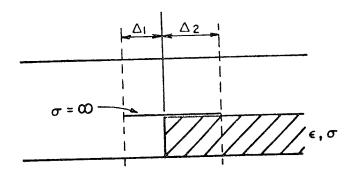
A MRCT solution was used because of interest in high permittivity dielectric materials. However, the method of obtaining the equations does not appear to be straight forward. It is the purpose of this section to outline how the extension of the MRCT can be applied to obtain the equation in a straight forward manner.

Figure 5.3.1 illustrates the dielectric step and the associated auxiliary problem. Note that the auxiliary problem is different from that of Royer and Mittra (1972).

With reference to the auxiliary geometry, we see that we have three distinct junctions. The first at $z=-\Delta$, is just a bifurcated waveguide. The second is the junction at z=0, which is just a junction between air and a dielectric filling the waveguide. The third is the junction at $z=\Delta_2$. This junction is just a bifurcated waveguide with slab loading. This junction can



(a) Dielectric Step Geometry



(b) Auxiliary Geometry

Fig. 5.3.1: The Dielectric Step

be solved in a manner similar to the normal bifurcated waveguide was solved in Chapter 2. The main difference is that the modal propagation constants in the partial slab loaded guide must be found numerically, whereas they are known in closed form with no dielectric loading. Hence the solution is obtained by constructing two homomorphic functions. Each function will be of a doubly modified form. The four infinite sets of equations are found from the consistency of modal coefficients the regions $0 \le x \le b$ and $b \le x \le a$ where $-\Delta_1 \le z \le \Delta_2$. The asymptotic behavior of the perturbation coefficients must be such that when Δ_1 , $\Delta_2 \to 0$ that the edge condition at the dielectric is satisfied. Royer and Mittra solved the case of TE incidence and thus the edge condition is

$$E_{y} = O(\rho^{\Delta})$$

$$H_{x} = O(\rho^{\Delta-1})$$

$$\rho \to 0$$

$$H_{z} = O(\rho^{\Delta-1})$$

where

$$\Delta = \frac{2}{\pi} \cos^{-1} \left(\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\varepsilon - 1}{\varepsilon + 1} \right) \right)$$

where p is the radial distance from the dielectric edge.

4. Dielectric Loaded N-Furcated Waveguide

This section serves as a forum to present some numerical data for the problem already considered in Chapter 4,
section 5. In particular, we consider the case of N = 5,

the junction being symmetrical about the center. This particular solution can be considered as an approximation of the coupling of two waveguides above a homogeneous earth. However, as shown in part 2 of this dissertation, this is not generally very accurate. If, however, a sample can be obtained and placed in a waveguide, this analysis applies directly by replacing the free space wavelength by the guide wavelength.

From this discussion, it is logical to compute argand diagrams for the reflection and transmission coefficients as a function of the earth's parameters. Figure 5.4.1 illustrates the change of the transmission coefficient in magnitude (dB) and phase versus the parameters $\epsilon_{_{\mbox{\scriptsize m}}}$ and $\sigma.$ Note that the data is normalized to the case of no dielectric (a subscript \mathbf{w} indicates the dielectric is present, a subscript w/c indicates the dielectric is not present). The resolution for nominal measurement accuracies is quite acceptable. The resolution is better for the lower permittivity and conductivity cases. However, since there is a larger range in the magnitude than phase, the vertical resolution will not be as great as the horizontal resolution of the figure. Note that the constant $\epsilon_{\rm r}$ curves tend to be vertical lines for the lower conductivities and hence the main resolution is in $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_{\text{m}}.$ This can be somewhat remedied by considering the reflection coefficient argand diagram in figure 5.4.2. Notice that the range of the phase is about a third of

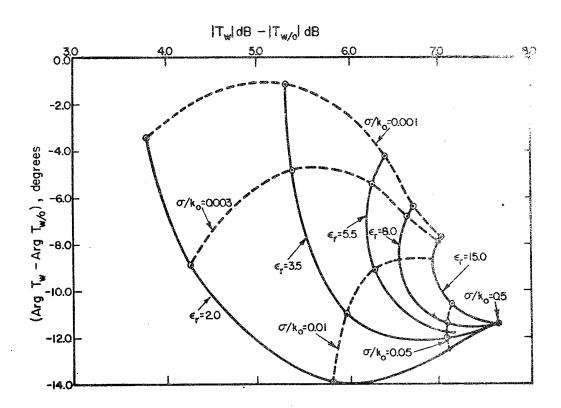


Fig. 5.4.1: Variation of the Coupling Coefficient of Two Parallel Plate Waveguides with the Earth's Parameters (kob1=kob5=1.0708, kob2=kob4=0.4, kob3=0.2, kod=0.31416).

that of figure 5.4.2. However, the range of the magnitude change is greater. These diagrams can be used simultaneously to obtain increased accuracy. One interesting combination of figures 5.4.1 and 5.4.2 is shown in figure 5.4.3. This argand diagram uses only the amplitude date of the transmission and reflection coefficients. No phase data is used. For nominal accuracies of the amplitudes the resolution is again acceptable and no phase data is required. However, use of phase data will in generallow increased resolution.

This data tends to indicate that remote sensing of the earth with waveguide horns is reasonable at frequencies where the horns are not excessively large.

The data presented has been for dimensions rather small compared to a wavelength. This is due to the limitation of the closed region analysis. A broader range of dimensions is more feasible for the associated open region problem. This is the subject of part 2 of this dissertation.

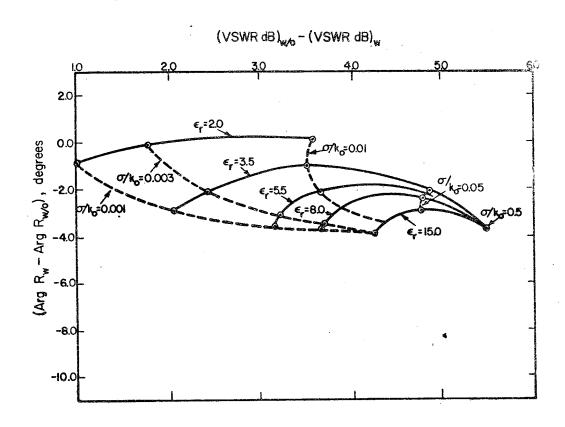


Fig. 5.4.2: Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of Two Parallel Plate Waveguides with the Earth's Parameters $(k_ob_1=k_ob_5=1.0708, k_ob_2=k_ob_4=0.4, k_ob_3=0.2, k_od=0.31416)$.

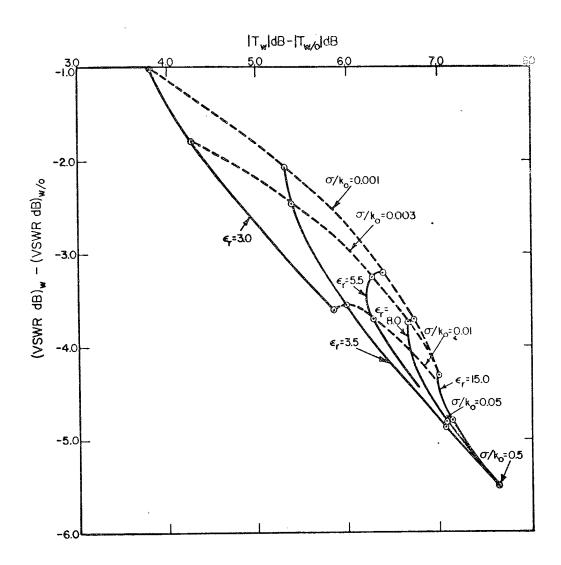


Fig. 5.4.3: The Combined Argand Diagram $(k_0b_1=k_0b_5=1.0708, k_0b_2=k_0b_4=0.4, k_0b_3=0.2, k_0d=0.31416)$.

This part of the dissertation has presented the MRCT solution of a new class of closed region problems. The approach has been to solve a canonical problem of a bifurcated waveguide with known incident fields. The solution of a composite problem is readily found from an associated auxiliary problem.

The particular class of problems solved are problems associated with the N-furcated waveguide junction. The convergence of the MRCT solutions is rapid requiring only a few perturbation terms for any particular meromorphic function constructed.

Data computed using the closed region analysis tends to indicate the usefulness of waveguide horns in remote sensing of the parameters of a homogeneous earth.

It should be noted that the approach used in this report is straight forward to apply to most problems which can be solved using the GSMT. The advantage of the MRCT is that the edge condition of a particular problem can be either changed or edge conditions added explicitly. This enhances the convergence of the solution over the GSMT.

Also, it should be noted that the principles used in this report are equally valid for modifications of open region problems. For example, a finite phased array with or without a ground plane can be solved using a combination of two canonical problems: (1) a parallel plate waveguide in free space, and (2) the bifircated waveguide. This is the subject of part 2 of this dissertation.

| | • | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Solution of Electromagnetic Problems Using
the Modified Residue Calculus and
Function Theoretic Techniques

Part II

Solution of Open Region Problems.

| | | | - |
|--|--|--|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Chapter 7: Introduction (Part II)

This part of the dissertation is concerned with the analysis of open region waveguide problems. The first part of the dissertation was confined to closed region problems. This allowed testing of the techniques expected to be employed on open region problems as well as solving some interesting closed region problems. The basic analysis was simpler since branch points were not encountered. In addition to strictly open region problems, this part of the dissertation uses the results of the first part of the dissertation in conjunction with open region analysis to solve problems containing both open and closed region parts.

Historically, semi-infinite waveguide problems like those to be discussed have been solved using the Wiener-Hopf technique or modifications of the Wiener-Hopf technique (Mittra and Lee, 1971). However, this dissertation has chosen to exploit the techniques developed in the first part of this dissertation and extend the MRCT to the open region case. Actually, one still has to solve the same equations; however, it is believed that the solution is more straight forward using the modified function theoretic technique (MFTT). The first use of this method was reported by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1971). They solved the problem of radiation of parallel plate waveguide into a dielectric slab. It is interesting to note

that in Kostelnicek's original technical report (Kostelnicek and Mittra, 1969) that the solution of this problem
was obtained by limiting arguments applied to the associated closed region problem which was solved using the
MRCT.

This dissertation completes the derivation of the technique suggested by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1971) and brings it full circle by uniting it with the MRCT. In this process, the open region analogue of the GSMI is in essence used. However, all edge conditions are satisfied explicitly in order to enhance the convergence of the solution over that which would normally be obtained.

The vehicle which allows one to solve a certain class of modified open region problems is the canofical problem of a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide. An infinite number of known discrete modes are assumed to be incident from the interior of the waveguide, as well as assuming fields with known arbitrary spectra incident on the waveguide junction from the exterior. This solution (given in Chapter 8) is just the superposition of solutions which are given in many texts (for example: Mittra and Lee, 1971). However, this solution has never been given and is important in the solution of modified semi-infinite problems.

The problem of radiation from a flanged waveguide is given as a first example of the technique is Chapter 8.

This particular problem was solved using the MFTT by Itoh and Mittra (1971). However, the techniques of this dissertation allow a simpler derivation of the solution.

In Chapter 9, the MFTT is applied to the problem of radiation of a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide into a homogeneous half space. This problem is in many respects similar to the problem solved by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1971); however, there are important differences. First, the problem of singularities is extensive studied and efficient numerical schemes to solve the integral equation are derived. Kostelnicek used the most basic form of point matching and subsequently had to invert a much larger matrix than necessary using the techniques of this dissertation. Secondly, the problem of radiation into a half space is interesting in itself because of the physical results. Thirdly, Kostelnicek used an incorrect form for his infinite products and hence apparently did not satisfy the edge condition (Montgomery, 1973).

The problem of a finite phased array is solved in Chapter 10. The importance of this solution is that it is not necessary to assume an infinite ground plane in order to obtain a solution. Also it is interesting to note that the solution only involves the solution of simultaneous linear equations as opposed to an integral equation. This particular solution is extremely important to the array designer because it corresponds more

closely to actual practice than the assumption of an infinite ground plane. It is also possible to solve the problem of a finite array with a finite ground plane using the techniques of this dissertation; although, the solution is not given. Comparison with the results obtained by Lee (1967) for the case of a finite array with an infinite ground plane yields some interesting results.

to give the solution of a finite array of waveguides radiating into a homogeneous half space (in this case considered to be a model of the earth's surface). Argand diagrams for the variation of the reflection coefficient and coupling coefficient of a two element array as a function of the earth's permittivity and conductivity are given.

Chapter 12 outlines the solution of several other open region problems. Among these problems is the radiation of a flanged waveguide into a half space. It is interesting to note that Kostelnicek and Mittra (1971) indicated that such a solution was not possible using the MFTT, indicating that a complete understanding of the method did not exist at that time.

Chapter 8: Foundation of the Modified Function Theoretic Technique

1. Introduction

This part of the dissertation is concerned with problems which are modifications of a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide. It is the purpose of this chapter to show that the modified function theoretic techniques can be approached in a direct manner by considering the canonical problem of a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide with an infinite number of waveguide modes incident as well as an arbitrary spectrum of plane waves incident from the exterior. The general solution is obtained from a non-homogeneous Hilbert problem and can be written in a manner similar to the perturbation expansion discussed in Chapter 1. In order to illustrate the method, the solution of a flanged parallel plate waveguide radiating into free space is given.

2. The Canonical Problem

2.1 Introduction

Because of their importance, we will consider two canonical problems: (1) a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide with an electric symmetry boundary (ref. Figure 8.2.1), and (2) a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide with a magnetic symmetry wall (ref. Figure 8.2.2).

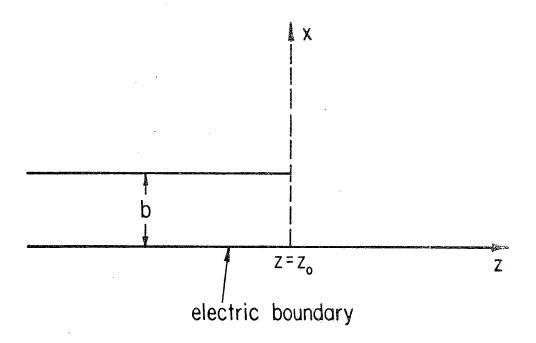


Fig. 8.2.1: Parallel Plate Waveguide

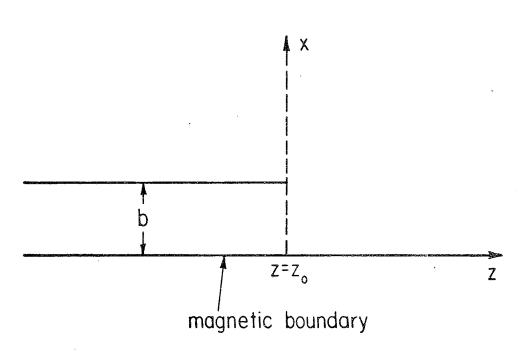


Fig. 8.2.2: Parallel Plate Waveguide

Both of these problems have been solved for the case of a single incident waveguide mode or plane wave incidence from the exterior. The solution to be given here represents a general superposition of these solutions. The form of the solution is of particular advantage when solving composite problems.

2.2 The Electric Wall Case

Let us consider the TM solution of the geometry shown in Figure 8.2.1. The TE solution follows in a similar manner and will not be given.

The TM fields are derivable from φ = H $_y$ and the fields in each region are given by

$$\phi_{B} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(B_{n}^{(\circ)} e^{-\gamma_{n}b^{Z}} + B_{n} e^{\gamma_{n}b^{Z}} \right) \cos \frac{m\pi x}{b}$$

$$z \leq 0; \quad 0 \leq x \leq b \quad (2.2.1)$$

$$\phi_{C} = \int_{0}^{\infty} \left(C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} + C(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} \right) \cos \lambda (x-b) d\lambda$$

$$z \leq 0, \quad x \geq b$$

$$\phi_{A} = \int_{0}^{\infty} \left(A^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} + A(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} \right) \cos \lambda x d\lambda$$

$$z \geq 0 \quad (2.2.3)$$

where the superscript (o) indicates an incident field and

$$\gamma_{nb} = \sqrt{(n\pi/b)^2 - k_0^2}$$

an d

$$\gamma = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - k_0^2}$$

A time convention of $e^{j\omega t}$ has been assumed and suppressed.

The branch of γ is chosen as shown in Figure 8.2.3. The inverse function $\lambda = \sqrt{\gamma^2 + k_0^2}$ is defined as shown in Figure 8.2.4.

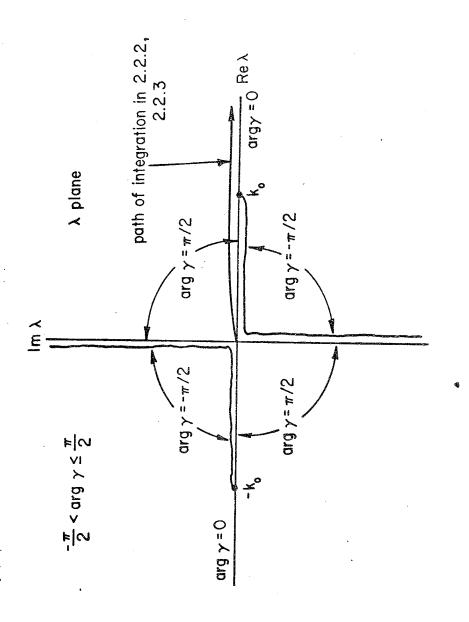


Fig. 8.2.3: Branch Cut Selection $\gamma = \sqrt{\lambda Z_{-K}} Z$

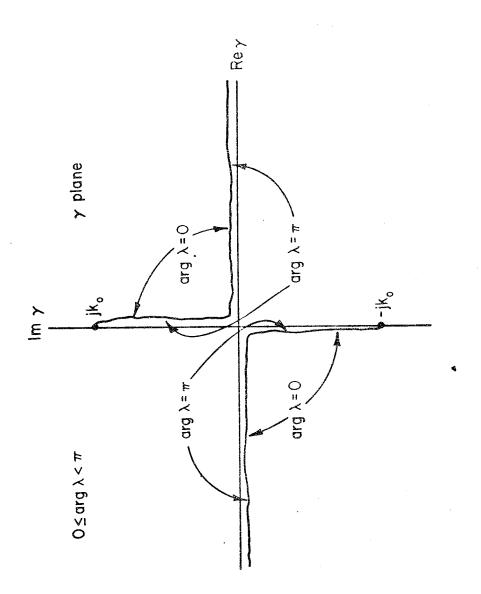


Fig. 8.2.4: Branch Cut Selection of $\lambda = \sqrt{\gamma^2 + k_0}$

Matching the tangential fields at $z = z_0$ we can arrive at the equations

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(A^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} + A(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} \right) \cos \lambda x \, d\lambda = \qquad (2.2.4)$$

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} + C(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} \right) \cos \lambda (x-b) \, d\lambda; \, x \ge b,$$

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(B_{n}^{(\circ)} e^{-\gamma nb^{z}} + B_{n} e^{\gamma nb^{z}} \right) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{b}; \, 0 \le x \le b.$$

and

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(A^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} - A(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} \right) \gamma \cos \lambda x \, d\lambda = \qquad (2.2.5)$$

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} - C(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} \right) \gamma \cos \lambda (x - b) \, d\lambda; \, x \ge b,$$

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} - C(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} \right) \gamma \cos \lambda (x - b) \, d\lambda; \, x \ge b,$$

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \left(C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} - C(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} \right) \gamma \cos \lambda (x - b) \, d\lambda; \, x \ge b,$$

We may use the orthogonality of cos $n\pi x/b$ and eliminate coefficients to find the following two equations in B_m , $B_m^{(o)}$, $A(\lambda)$, $A^o(\lambda)$.

$$\gamma_{mb}b \in_{m} B_{m}e^{\gamma_{mb}z_{0}} = (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{O}(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b e^{\gamma z_{0}} d\lambda}{\gamma_{mb} - \gamma} + (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b e^{-\gamma z_{0}} d\lambda}{\gamma_{mb} + \gamma}$$

$$(2.2.6)$$

$$\gamma_{mb}b \in_{m} B_{m}^{(o)}e^{-\gamma_{mb}z_{o}} = (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{o}(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b e^{\gamma z_{o}} d\lambda}{\gamma_{mb} + \gamma} \\
+ (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b e^{-\gamma z_{o}} d\lambda}{\gamma_{mb} - \gamma}$$

$$\varepsilon_{\mathbf{m}} = \begin{cases} 2, & \mathbf{m} = 0 \\ 1, & \mathbf{m} > 1 \end{cases}$$

and m = 0, 1, 2, It should be noted that the integrals are not Cauchy principal values since the approant pole is actually a removable singularity.

The equations involving $C(\lambda)$, $C^{\circ}(\lambda)$, $A(\lambda)$, and $A^{\circ}(\lambda)$ are more difficult to obtain because of singularities.

Consider multiplying (2.2.4) and (2.2.5) by $\cos \alpha(x-b)$ and integrating x from b to ∞ . From the orthogonality of the eigenfunctions in region c we have

$$\int_{b}^{\infty} \cos \alpha(x-b) \cos \lambda(x-b) dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \delta(\lambda-\alpha) \quad (2.2.8)$$

Using Gel'fand and Shilov (1964), we can also find

$$\int_{b}^{\infty} \cos \alpha(x-b) \cos \lambda x \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \cos \lambda b \, \delta(\lambda-\alpha)$$

$$-\frac{\lambda \sin \lambda b}{\lambda^{2} - \alpha^{2}}$$
(2.2.9)

In both (2.2.8) and (2.2.9), $\delta(\cdot)$ is the Dirac delta function. Using these results we may find

$$\pi \ C(\alpha) \ \Gamma \ e^{\frac{\Gamma z}{\circ}} = \pi \ \Gamma \cos \alpha b \ A^{\circ}(\alpha) e^{\frac{\Gamma z}{\circ}} \circ$$

$$- PV \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{\circ}(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b \ e^{\frac{\gamma z}{\circ}} \circ d\lambda}{\gamma - \Gamma} + \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b \ e^{-\gamma z} \circ d\lambda}{\gamma + \Gamma}$$
and
$$(2.2.10)$$

$$\pi \ C^{\circ}(\alpha) \ \Gamma \ e^{-\Gamma z} \circ = \pi \ \Gamma \cos \alpha b \ A(\alpha) e^{-\Gamma z} \circ$$

$$+\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{O}(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b e^{\gamma z}}{\gamma + \Gamma} - PV \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \sin \lambda b e^{-\gamma z}}{\gamma - \Gamma}$$

$$\Gamma = \sqrt{\alpha^2 - k_0^2}$$

Note that the Cauchy principal value is used in (2.2.10) and (2.2.11). This interpretation of the meaning of the integrals may be found by considering the transform pair

$$F(\alpha) = \int_{b}^{\infty} \cos \alpha(x-b) f(x) dx \qquad (2.2.12a)$$

$$f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\infty} \cos \alpha(x-b) F(\alpha) d\alpha \qquad (2.2.12b)$$

We may consider that f(x) is our original equation, either (2.2.4) or (2.2.5). Then the integrations involved in (2.2.10) and (2.2.11) must be interpreted in a manner such that (2.2.12b) will yield the original result. In doing this we use the following integral (Erdelyi; 1954)

PV
$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\cos \lambda(x-b) d\lambda}{\alpha^{2} - \lambda^{2}} = \frac{\pi}{2\alpha} \sin \alpha(x-b)$$

Equations (2.2.7) and (2.2.11) relate the incident fields and the unknown spectrum $A(\lambda)$. Equations (2.2.6) and (2.2.10) relate B_n and $C(\lambda)$ in terms of $A(\lambda)$.

The solution of these equations is found in a manner similar to Itoh and Mittra (1971).

Consider a function $T(\omega)$ with branch cuts L_1 and L_2 as shown in Figure 8.2.5. Then consider the integrals

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega - \gamma_{mb}}, \quad \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega - \Gamma}$$

where $m = 0,1,2,\ldots$; and Σ is the contour shown in Figure 6.2.5. Then

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega - \gamma_{mb}} = \frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{T^{-}(\omega) - T^{+}(\omega)}{\omega - \gamma_{mb}} \frac{\lambda d\lambda}{\omega}$$

$$+ \frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{T^{+}(-\omega) - T^{-}(-\omega)}{\omega + \gamma_{mb}} \frac{\lambda d\lambda}{\omega}$$

$$- (-1)^{m+1} T(\gamma_{mb}) = 0 \qquad (2.2.13)$$

where we have used $T^-(\gamma_{mb}) = T^+(\gamma_{mb}) = T(\gamma_{mb})$ in order to insure that we don't have principal value integrals. Also we have transformed variables from ω to λ via $\lambda d\lambda = \omega d\omega$, i.e., $\lambda = \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}$.

Similarly

$$\frac{1}{2\pi \mathbf{j}} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{\mathbf{T}(\omega) d\omega}{\omega - \Gamma} = \frac{\mathbf{PV}}{2\pi \mathbf{j}} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{T}^{-}(\omega) - \mathbf{T}^{+}(\omega)}{\omega - \Gamma} \frac{\lambda d\lambda}{\omega}$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2\pi \mathbf{j}} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{T}^{+}(-\omega) - \mathbf{T}^{-}(-\omega)}{\omega + \Gamma} \frac{\lambda d\lambda}{\omega}$$

$$- \frac{1}{2} \left[\mathbf{T}^{+}(\Gamma) + \mathbf{T}^{-}(\Gamma) \right] = 0 \qquad (2.2.14)$$

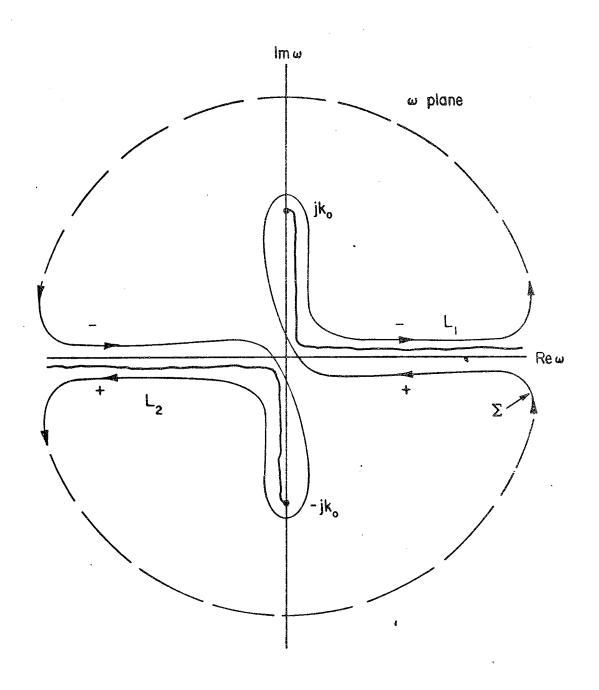


Fig. 8.2.5: The Integration Contour, Σ

Comparing (2.2.13) and (2.2.14) with (2.2.7) and (2.2.11) we find

(i)
$$(-1)^{m+1}T(\gamma_{mb}) = \gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_m B_m^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{mb}^{z}}, m = 0,1,2...$$

(ii)
$$T^{+}(-\omega)-T^{-}(-\omega) = 2\pi j \omega \sin \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda)e^{\omega z}$$
, $\omega \varepsilon L_{1}$

(iii)
$$T^{-}(\omega)-T^{+}(\omega) = -2\pi j \omega \sin \lambda b A(\lambda)e^{-\omega z}, \omega \varepsilon L_{\gamma}$$

(iv)
$$T^{+}(\omega)+T^{-}(\omega) = -2\pi\omega \cos \lambda b A(\lambda)e^{-\omega z}$$

+ $2\pi\omega C^{\circ}(\lambda)e^{-\omega z}$, $\omega \epsilon L_{1}$

We can also consider the integrals

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega + \gamma_{mh}}, \quad \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega + \Gamma}$$

Using the above properties and comparing the results obtained from these integrals we find upon comparing with (2.2.6) and (2.2.10) the following properties

(v)
$$(-1)^{m+1}T(-\gamma_{mb}) = -\gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_m B_m e^{\gamma_{mb}z_0}, m = 0,1,2,...$$

(vi)
$$T^{+}(-\omega)+T^{-}(-\omega)=2\pi\omega\cos\lambda b\ A^{\circ}(\lambda)e^{\omega z}$$

 $-2\pi\omega\ C(\lambda)e^{\circ},\qquad \omega \varepsilon L_{1}$

Applying the edge condition (Mittra and Lee, 1971) we can easily show that

$$B_{m}(-1)^{m} = 0(m^{-3/2}), m \rightarrow \infty$$

Hence from (v) it follows that

(vii)
$$T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2}), |\omega| \rightarrow \infty$$

The original problem of solving the integral equation is now reduced to that of constructing a function $T(\omega)$ satisfying the properties given above.

Using (iv) and (iii) we can easily find that

$$T^{-}(\omega) = T^{+}(\omega) e^{j2\lambda b} - 2\pi j \omega \sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} e^{-\omega z} \circ C^{\circ}(\lambda),$$

$$\omega \in L_{1}$$
(2.2.15)

This relates the discontinuity across L_1 to just the known incident field. We may then combine (2.2.15) and (ii) to give

$$T^{-}(\omega) = T^{+}(\omega) G(\omega) + g(\omega) \qquad (2.2.16)$$

where

$$G(\omega) = \begin{cases} e^{j2\lambda b}, & \omega \in L_1 \\ 1, & \omega \in L_2 \end{cases}$$

$$g(\omega) = \begin{cases} -2\pi j & \omega \sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} e^{-\omega z} \circ C^{\circ}(\lambda), & \omega \in L_1 \\ +2\pi j & \omega \sin \lambda b e^{-\omega z} \circ A^{\circ}(\lambda), & \omega \in L_2 \end{cases}$$

Where we recall $\lambda = \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}$. Equation (2.2.16) is a non-homogeneous Hilbert problem whose solution may be found using using the theory of singular integral equations (Musk-helishveli, 1953). The solution is facilitated by first considering the associated homogeneous problem

$$X^{-}(\omega) = X^{+}(\omega) e^{j2\lambda b}, \quad \omega \in L_1 ; \quad X^{-}(\omega) = X^{+}(\omega), \quad \omega \in L_2 \quad (2.2.17)$$

The solution of (2.2.17) is found from a direct application of the Plemelj formulas.

$$\frac{\ln X(\omega)}{\omega^2 + k_0^2} = \frac{b}{\pi} \int_{L_1} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t^2 + k_0^2(t - \omega)}}$$
 (2.2.18)

The details of this integration may be found in Mittra and Lee (1971) with the result being

$$\frac{\ln X(\omega)}{\omega^2 + k_0^2} = \frac{b}{\pi} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}} \ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}}{-jk_0} \right)$$

hence

$$X(\omega) = H(\omega) \exp \left(\frac{b\sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}}{\pi} \ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}}{-jk_0} \right) \right) \quad (2.2.19)$$

where $H(\omega)$ is an unknown entire function found from (i) with $B_m^{(o)} \equiv 0$. Note that $X(\omega)$ has only a branch cut singularity. Hence

$$H(\omega) = H_1(\omega) \Pi(\omega, \gamma_b)(\omega-jk_o)$$

where $H_1(\omega)$ is an entire function which can be found from condition (vii). Before proceeding with the solution is worth discussing the meaning of the multivalued function

$$\sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}$$
 $\ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}}{-jk_0} \right)$

appearing in (2.2.19). This function must be interpreted so that it only has a branch cut L_1 with a discontinuity as given by (2.2.17) as well as being continuous across L_2 .

Consider the phase of the argument of the log as we traverse L_1 and L_2 as shown in Figure 8.2.6. Figure 8.2.7 illustrates the associated variation of the phase of argument of the logarithm.

Recalling the definition of the branch cut of given in Figure 8.2.4, we can write the following explicit forms for $X(\omega)$ on the top and bottom of L_1 and L_2 . For $\omega \epsilon L_1$,

$$X^{-}(\omega) = H(\omega) \exp \left\{ \frac{b}{-\sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{Q}^{2}}} \left\{ ln \left| \frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{Q}^{2}}}{-jk_{Q}} \right| + j\phi_{Q} \right\} \right\}$$

$$\mathbf{X}^{+}(\omega) = \mathbf{H}(\omega) \exp \left\{ \frac{-\mathbf{b}}{-\sqrt{\omega^{2} + \mathbf{k}_{O}^{2}}} \left\{ \ln \left| \frac{\omega + \sqrt{\omega^{2} + \mathbf{k}_{O}^{2}}}{-\mathbf{j} \mathbf{k}_{O}} \right| + \mathbf{j} \phi_{a} \right\} \right\}$$

where
$$\phi_c = \arg\left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_O^2}}{-jk_O}\right)$$
 along L_1^- and $\phi_a = \arg\left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_O^2}}{-jk_O}\right)$ along L_1^+

Hence
$$\frac{X^{-}(\omega)}{X^{+}(\omega)} = \exp \left\{ j \frac{b}{\pi} \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{O}^{2}} \quad (\phi_{c} + \phi_{a}) \right\}$$

Similarly, for $-\omega \in L_2$

$$X^{-}(-\omega) = H(-\omega) \exp \left\{ \frac{-b}{\pi} \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{O}^{2}} \left[\ln \left| \frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{O}^{2}}}{jk_{O}} \right| + j\phi_{O}^{*} \right] \right\}$$

$$X^{+}(-\omega) = H(-\omega) \exp \left\{ \frac{b}{\pi} \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{O}^{2}} \left[\ln \left| \frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{O}^{2}}}{jk_{O}} \right| + j\phi_{O}^{*} \right] \right\}$$

Where $\varphi_{\mathbf{a}}^{}$ and $\varphi_{\mathbf{c}}^{}$ are defined similar to $\varphi_{\mathbf{a}}^{}$ and $\varphi_{\mathbf{c}}^{}.$

Thus

$$\frac{X^{-}(-\omega)}{X^{+}(-\omega)} = \exp \left[\frac{J_{\overline{u}}^{b} \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{O}^{2}}}{\pi} (\phi_{m}' + \phi_{L}') \right]$$

Clearly then we must have

$$\phi_c + \phi_a = 2\pi$$

and

$$\phi_a$$
' + ϕ_c ' = 0

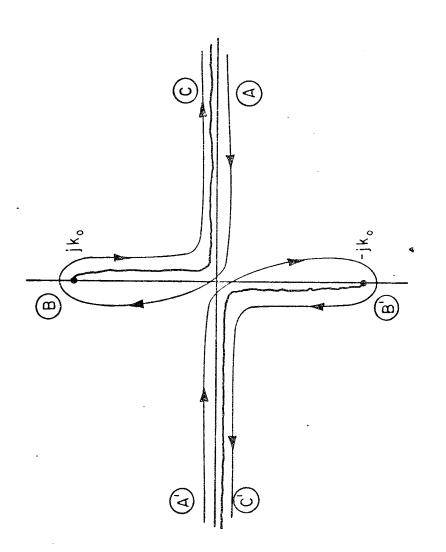
for (2.2.17) to hold. Hence we must have

$$\phi_a = \frac{\pi}{2}$$
, $\phi_c = \frac{3\pi}{2}$

and

$$\phi_a' = \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad \phi_c' = \frac{-\pi}{2}$$

Thus in order for $X(\omega)$ to be the solution to (2.2.17) we must choose a branch cut along the negative imaginary axis with the argument of the logarithm taking on either $3\pi/2$ or $-\pi/2$ along the cut depending on the direction of approach.



s. 8.2.6: Path Location for Use with Fig. 8.2.7

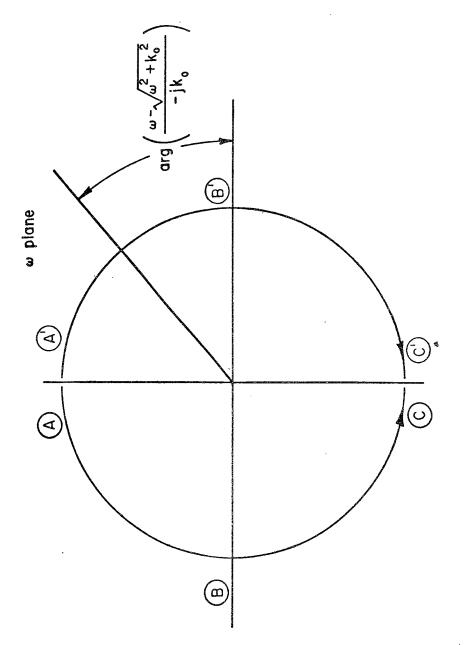


Fig. 8.2.7: Phase of the Argument of the Legarithm

We can now rewrite (2.2.16) using (2.2.17) as follows

$$\frac{\mathbf{T}^{-}(\omega)}{\mathbf{X}^{-}(\omega)} = \frac{\mathbf{T}^{+}(\omega)}{\mathbf{X}^{+}(\omega)} + \frac{\mathbf{g}(\omega)}{\mathbf{X}^{-}(\omega)}$$
(2.2.18)

This can be solved using the Plemelj formulas

$$T(\omega) = X(\omega) \left\{ P(\omega) + \int_{L_1} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t-\omega)} - \int_{L_2} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t-\omega)} \right\}$$
 where (2.2.19)

$$g^{(1)}(\omega) = -\omega \sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} e^{-\omega z} \circ C^{\circ}(\lambda)$$

$$g^{(2)}(\omega) = \omega \sin \lambda b e^{\omega z} \wedge A^{\circ}(\lambda)$$

where $P(\omega)$ is to be found. Using condition (i)

$$T(\gamma_{mb}) = (-1)^{m+1} \gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_{m}^{B} e^{-\gamma_{mb}^{Z}} o$$

$$= X(\gamma_{mb}) P(\gamma_{mb})$$
(2.2.20)

Clearly then $P(\omega)$ is just a perturbation sum of the form

$$P(\omega) = \frac{\kappa_0}{\omega - jk_0} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\epsilon_n}{\omega - \gamma_{nb}}$$

where K_0 and g_n can be related to $B_m^{(o)}$ using (2.2.20). Hence

$$T(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega) \Pi(\omega, \gamma_{b}) exp \left\{ \frac{b\sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{c}^{2}}}{\pi} \left(ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{c}^{2}}}{k_{o}} \right) + \frac{j\pi}{2} \right) \right\}.$$

$$\left[K_{o} + (\omega - jk_{o}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}}{\omega - \gamma_{nb}} + \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t - \omega)} \right\} \right] \qquad (2.2.21)$$

where we have used the fact that on L_2 we have $X^+(\omega) = X^-(\omega) = X(\omega)$. Also note that the singularities of the integrands are of two types: a simple pole at

 ω =t and a branch cut in X(t) along L₁. This will be important in later chapters when choosing an efficient numerical scheme.

From condition (vii) we can easily find

$$H_1(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{\omega b}{\pi} \left[1-C_e-\ln\left(\frac{k_o b}{2\pi}\right)\right] - \frac{j\omega b}{2}\right\}$$

where $C_{\ell} = 0.577...$ is Euler's constant.

Equation (2.2.21) is very reminiscent to the perturbation expansion used in connection with modification of the bifurcated waveguide. There are two primary differences:

(1) the homogeneous solution has changed form to reflect the removal of a conductor to infinity, and (2) the summations associated with the regions which become infinite become integrals. (2.2.21) represents the complete general solution of a semi-infinite parallel plate wave-guide.

2.3 The Magnetic Wall Case

Let us now consider the TM solution of the geometry shown in Figure 8.2.2. Since many of the details are similar to that of the electric wall case, only the distinctive results will be presented.

The TM fields are derivable from ϕ = H and the fields in each region are given by

$$\phi_{B} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(B_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{2n-1,2b}z} + B_{n} e^{\gamma_{2n-1,2b}z} \right) \sin k_{nb}x$$

$$z \le 0, 0 \le x \le b^{(2.3.1)}$$

$$\phi_{C} = \int_{0}^{\infty} \left(C^{o}(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} + C(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} \right) \cos \lambda(x-b) d\lambda$$

$$z \le 0, x \ge b$$
(2.3.2)

$$\phi_{A} = \int_{0}^{\infty} \left(A^{O}(\lambda) e^{\gamma z} + A(\lambda) e^{-\gamma z} \right) \sin \lambda x \, d\lambda,$$

$$z > 0$$
(2.3.3)

$$k_{nb} = \frac{(2n-1)\pi}{2b}$$

In a manner similar to the electric wall case we can find the following integral equations:

b
$$\gamma_{2m-1,2b}$$
 B_{m} $e^{\gamma_{2m-1,2b}z_{0}} = (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{0}(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b}{\gamma_{2m-1,2b} - \gamma} + (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b}{\gamma_{2m-1,2b} + \gamma} + (2.3.4)$

b
$$\gamma_{2m-1,2b}$$
 $B_{m}^{(o)}$ $e^{-\gamma_{2m-1,2b}z_{o}} = (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{o}(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b e^{\gamma z_{o}} d\lambda}{\gamma_{2m-1,2b} + \gamma}$
 $+ (-1)^{m+1} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b e^{-\gamma z_{o}} d\lambda}{\gamma_{2m-1,2b} - \gamma}$ (2.3.5)

where $m = 1, 2, \ldots$. Note that as in the electric wall case the Cauchy principal value is not required for (2.3.4) and (2.3.5). Also

$$\pi \ C(\alpha)\Gamma \ e^{\Gamma z} = \pi \ \Gamma \sin \alpha b \ A^{O}(\alpha) \ e^{\Gamma z}$$

$$+ PV \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{O}(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b \ e^{\gamma z}}{\gamma - \Gamma} d\lambda - \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b \ e^{-\gamma z}}{\gamma + \Gamma} d\lambda$$

$$\pi \ C^{O}(\alpha)\Gamma \ e^{-\Gamma z} = \pi \ \Gamma \sin \alpha b \ A(\alpha) \ e^{-\Gamma z}$$

$$- \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A^{O}(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b \ e^{\gamma z}}{\gamma + \Gamma} d\lambda + PV \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b \ e^{-\alpha d}}{\gamma - \Gamma} d\lambda$$

$$= \frac{A^{O}(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b \ e^{-\alpha d}}{\gamma + \Gamma} + PV \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{A(\lambda)\lambda \cos \lambda b \ e^{-\alpha d}}{\gamma - \Gamma} d\lambda$$

Note that the principal value is again required for the equations associated with both of the open regions.

The solution to equations (2.3.4) - (2.3.7) is found by considering the following integrals

$$\frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega^{\pm} \gamma_{2m-1,2b}}, \quad \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{T(\omega) d\omega}{\omega \pm \Gamma}$$

where $T(\omega)$ has branch cuts L_1 and L_2 as shown in Figure 8.2.5, and $m=1,2,3,\ldots$ Σ is the same contour as the electric wall case. Then comparing the results of the above integrals with (2.3.4) - (2.3.7) we can find

(i)
$$.(-1)^{m+1}T(\gamma_{2m-1,2b}) = \gamma_{2m-1,2b} b B_m^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{2m-1,2b}} c_{,}$$

$$m = 1,2,3,...$$

(ii)
$$T^{+}(-\omega)-T^{-}(-\omega) = -2\pi j \omega \cos \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda)e^{\omega z}$$
, $\omega \in L_{1}$

(iii)
$$T^{-}(\omega) - T^{+}(\omega) = -2\pi j \omega \cos \lambda b A(\lambda) e^{-\omega z}$$
, $\omega \in L_{1}$

(iv)
$$T^+(\omega)+T^-(\omega) = 2\pi \omega \sin \lambda b A(\lambda)e^{-\omega z}$$

$$-2\pi \omega C^{\circ}(\lambda)e^{-\omega z}$$
, $\omega \varepsilon L_{\gamma}$

(v)
$$(-1)^{m+1}T(-\gamma_{2m-1,2b}) = -\gamma_{2m-1,2b} b B_m e^{\gamma_{2m-1,2b}z_{0}}$$

$$m = 1, 2, \ldots$$

(vi)
$$T^{+}(-\omega)+T^{-}(-\omega) = -2\pi \omega \sin \lambda b A^{O}(\lambda)e^{\omega z}$$

+ $2\pi \omega C(\lambda)e^{\omega z}$, $\omega \epsilon L_{2}$

Also the edge condition requires

(vii)
$$T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2}), |\omega| \rightarrow \infty.$$

Using (iii) and (iv) we can easily find

$$T^{-}(\omega) = -e^{j2\lambda b}T^{+}(\omega) - 2\pi\omega C^{\circ}(\lambda)e^{-\omega z} \circ e^{j\lambda b} \cos \lambda b,$$

$$\omega \in L_{\gamma}(2.3.8)$$

This relates the discontinuity across L_1 to the known incident field. We may then combine (2.3.8) with (ii) to give

$$T^{-}(\omega) = T^{+}(\omega) G(\omega) + g(\omega) \qquad (2.3.9)$$

$$G(\omega) = \begin{cases} -e^{j2\lambda b}, & \omega \in L_1 \\ 1, & \omega \in L_2 \end{cases}$$

$$g(\omega) = \begin{cases} -2\pi\omega \cos \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\omega z}, & \omega \epsilon L_{1} \\ -2\pi j\omega \cos \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\omega z}, & \omega \epsilon L_{2} \end{cases}$$

Equation (2.3.9) is a non-homogeneous Hilbert problem similar to the electric wall case. The primary difference with the electric wall case is the presence of a minus sign in the homogeneous problem.

$$X^{-}(\omega) = -X^{+}(\omega) e^{j2\lambda b}, \quad \omega \in L_{1}$$
 (2.3.10)
 $X^{-}(\omega) = X^{+}(\omega), \quad \omega \in L_{2}$

The solution to (2.3.10) clearly involves the factorization of $\exp(j2\lambda b)$ as in the electric wall case. However, we must also have a minus sign discontinuity. Such a function is by inspection $\sqrt{\omega-jk}_{O}$. Hence

$$X(\omega) = H_{\underline{1}}(\omega) \prod_{\text{odd}} (\omega, \gamma_b) \sqrt{\omega - j k_0}$$

$$\exp \left\{ \frac{b \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}}{\pi} \left(\ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}}{k} \right) + \frac{j \pi}{2} \right) \right\}$$

The general solution is now easily shown to be

$$T(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega) \prod_{\text{odd}} (\omega, \gamma_{b}) \sqrt{\omega - jk_{o}} \exp \left\{ \frac{b\sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{o}^{2}}}{\pi} \left(\ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{o}^{2}}}{k_{o}} \right) + \frac{j\pi}{2} \right) \right\}$$

$$\cdot \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1,2b}} + \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t-\omega)} - \int_{L_{2}} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \right)$$

 $H_{\dot{\gamma}}(\omega)$ is found from (vii) to be

$$H_1(\omega) = \exp \left\{ \frac{\omega b}{\pi} \left(1 - C_e - \ln \left(\frac{2k_o b}{\pi} \right) \right) - \frac{j\omega b}{2} \right\}$$

This choice of $H_1(\omega)$ is the correct one in order for condition (vii) to hold. Note that the asymptotic behavior of the odd infinite product is quite different from the complete infinite product. This combined with the behavior of the term $\sqrt{\omega-jk_0}$ and the perturbation sum ensures that $T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2})$, $|\omega| \to \infty$.

Using (i) we can relate g_n to $B_n^{(o)}$

$$(-1)^{m+1}T(\gamma_{2m-1,2b}) = H_1(\gamma_{2m-1,2b}) \prod_{\substack{n \text{odd}}}^{(m)} (\gamma_{2m-1,2b}, \gamma_b)$$

$$\cdot \sqrt{\gamma_{2m-1,2b}} = \exp\left\{\frac{2m-1}{2} \left(\ln\left(\frac{\gamma_{2m-1,2b}}{k_o}\right) - (2m-1)\pi/2b \right) + \frac{J\pi}{2}\right\}\right\}$$

$$\cdot \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_{2m-1,2b}}\right) g_m = \gamma_{2m-1,2b} b B_m^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{2m-1,2b}} o$$

Similarly using (2.3.9) we can find

$$g^{(1)}(\omega) = j\omega \cos \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} C^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{-\omega z}, \omega \varepsilon L_{1}$$

$$g^{(2)}(\omega) = -\omega \cos \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda) e^{\omega z}, \omega \varepsilon L_{2}$$

3. Formulation and Solution of Composite Problems

The key to the modified function theoretic technique
is the identification of an auxiliary problem. The auxiliary problem is such that the solution may be identified
in terms of soluble problems.

Before proceeding to other problems let us illustrate this process with the open region analogue of an E-plane step -- a flanged parallel plate waveguide. This problem has been solved by Itoh and Mittra (1971) using this same technique, but it is believed that a derivation based on the concepts of this dissertation are perhaps clearer. Also Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969) indicated that a solution was possible as well as sketching the equations.

Figure 8.3.1 illustrates the flanged waveguite and the associated geometry. Notice that the associated geometry has a recessed dielectric of finite permittivity. As $\delta \to \infty$ and $\epsilon \to \infty$, the auxiliary problem coincides with the original flanged problem. This auxiliary problem allows us to perturb the parallel plate solution effectively.

Consider the case of a TEM waveguide mode incident on the junction, then from (2.2.21) we can write

$$T(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(\frac{K_o}{\omega - j k_o} + \int_{L_j} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t - \omega)} \right)$$
(3.1)

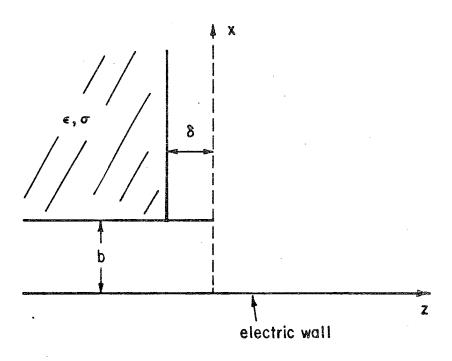
where

$$X(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)(\omega - jk_{o})\Pi(\omega, \gamma_{b}) exp\left\{\frac{b\sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{o}^{2}}}{\pi}\left(ln\left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{o}^{2}}}{k_{o}}\right) + \frac{j\pi}{2}\right)\right\}$$

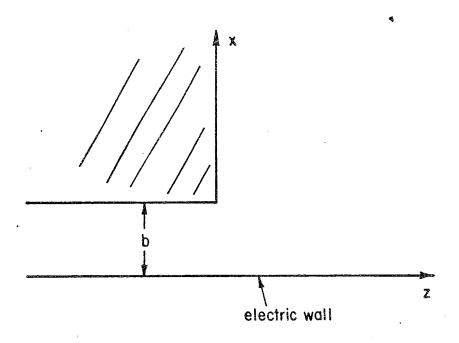
where

$$H_1(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{\omega b}{\pi} \left(1-C_e-\ln\left(\frac{k_o^b}{2}\right)\right) - \frac{j\omega b}{2}\right\}$$

Clearly the other terms are not necessary since $B_m^{(o)} \equiv 0$, m > 0 and $A^{(o)} \equiv 0$ imply that $g_m \equiv 0$, m > 0 and $g^{(o)}(t) \equiv 0$.



(a) Auxiliary Problem



(b) The Flanged Waveguide Geometry

Fig. 8.3.1: The Flanged Parallel Plate Waveguide

 K_{0} is known from (i) of section 2.2 to be given by

$$T(jk_0) = -2jk_0b = K_0\left(\frac{X(\omega)}{\omega - jk_0}\right)_{\omega} = jk_0$$

where $B_0^{(o)} = 1$.

From (vi) of section 2.2 we have

$$T(-\omega) = -\omega\pi C(\lambda) \qquad (3.2)$$

where $T^+(-\omega) = T^-(-\omega) = T(-\omega)$ since (3.1) only has a branch cut L_1 . Also from (2.2.19)

$$g^{(1)}(\omega) = -\omega \sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} C^{\circ}(\lambda)$$
 (3.3)

where $\lambda = \sqrt{\omega^2 + k_0^2}$ with $\text{Im}\lambda \ge 0$. However, the junction at $z = -\delta$ can be solved to give an additional relation between $C^{\circ}(\gamma)$ and $C(\gamma)$, namely

$$C^{\circ}(\lambda) = C(\lambda) R(\lambda)$$
 (3.4)

where

$$R(\lambda) = \frac{\varepsilon \omega - \Gamma}{\varepsilon \omega + \Gamma} e^{-2\omega \delta}$$

where

$$\Gamma = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - \varepsilon k_0^2}$$

Hence we may combine (3.2) - (3.4) to give the following integral equation for $g^{(1)}(\omega)$,

$$g^{(1)}(\omega) = \frac{-\sin \lambda b}{\pi} e^{j\lambda b} R(\lambda) X(-\omega) \left(\frac{K_o}{\omega + jk_o} + \int_{L_1} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t+\omega)} \right)$$
Consider the change of variable (3.5)

$$g^{(1)}(\omega) = \frac{-\sin \lambda b}{\pi(\omega + jk_0)} \frac{e^{j\lambda b}R(\lambda)X(-\omega)G(\omega)}{\pi(\omega + jk_0)}$$
(3.6)

Then (3.5) becomes

$$G(\omega) = K_{O} + (\omega + jk_{O}) \int_{L_{1}} \frac{Q(t) G(t) dt}{t + \omega}$$
 (3.7)

$$Q(\omega) = \frac{-\sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} R(\lambda) X(-\omega)}{\pi(\omega + jk_0) X^{-}(\omega)}$$
(3.8)

Equation (3.7) is identical (with a slight change of notation) to the equation derived by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969) and later solved by Itoh and Mittra (1971).

In order to solve (3.6) effectively we should use the asymptotic behavior of $G(\omega)$. To this end consider the field in the dielectric.

$$\phi_{D} = \int_{0}^{\infty} D(\lambda) e^{\Gamma z} \cos \lambda(x-b) d\lambda$$

Using the other field relations we can easily find

$$D(\lambda) = e^{(\Gamma + \omega)\delta} \frac{2\varepsilon\omega}{\varepsilon\omega - \Gamma} C^{\circ}(\lambda)$$
 (3.9)

And from Mittra and Lee (1971) we can easily show for $\delta = 0$

$$D(\lambda) = O(\lambda^{-3/2 - \Delta}), \quad |\lambda| \to \infty$$
 (3.10)

where

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{\pi} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{(\varepsilon - 1)}{2(\varepsilon + 1)} \right)$$

For the case of $\varepsilon \to \infty$, $\Delta = 1/6$. Then from (3.3), (3.6), (3.9) and (3.10) we have

$$G(t) = O(t^{-\Delta}) \tag{3.11a}$$

and from (3.8)

$$Q(t) = O(t^{-1})$$
 (3.11b)

This is in agreement with Itoh (1972). Using Stieltges transforms we can show

$$\int_{L_3} \frac{Q(t) G(t) dt}{t + \omega} = O(\omega^{-1}) + O(\omega^{-1-\Delta})$$
 (3.12)

as $|\omega| \to \infty$. Hence we see that the constant terms in (3.7) must cancel as $|\omega| \to \infty$, or

$$K_0 + \int_{L_1} Q(t)G(t) dt = 0$$

or if we write $Q(t)G(t) = \overline{G} t^{-1-\Delta}$ for $t > t_0 \epsilon L_1$ we have

$$K_{0} + \int_{L_{1}}^{(t_{0})} Q(t)G(t) dt + \overline{G} \int_{t_{0}}^{\infty} t^{-1-\Delta} dt = 0$$
 (3.13)

This equation is similar to (3.10) of chapter 2 derived for the E-plane step. Equation (3.13) in conjunction with (3.7) is the solution to the problem since all the modal coefficients and plane wave spectra are readily found from $T(\omega)$ with $G(\omega)$ determined. The method of solution of the integral equation will be discussed in the next chapter in conjunction with another problem.

$$Q(\omega) = \frac{-\sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} R(\lambda) X(-\omega)}{\pi(\omega + jk_0) X^{-}(\omega)}$$
 (3.8)

Equation (3.7) is identical (with a slight change of notation) to the equation derived by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969) and later solved by Itoh and Mittra (1971).

In order to solve (3.6) effectively we should use the asymptotic behavior of $G(\omega)$. To this end consider the field in the dielectric.

$$\phi_{\rm D} = \int_{0}^{\infty} D(\lambda) e^{\Gamma z} \cos \lambda (x - b) d\lambda$$

Using the other field relations we can easily find

$$D(\lambda) = e^{(\Gamma + \omega)\delta} \frac{2\varepsilon\omega}{\varepsilon\omega - \Gamma} C^{\circ}(\lambda)$$
 (3.9)

And from Mittra and Lee (1971) we can easily show for $\delta = 0$

$$D(\lambda) = O(\lambda^{-3/2-\Delta}), \quad |\lambda| \to \infty$$
 (3.10)

where

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{\pi} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{(\varepsilon - 1)}{2(\varepsilon + 1)} \right)$$

For the case of $\varepsilon \rightarrow \infty$, $\Delta = 1/6$. Then from (3.3), (3.6), (3.9) and (3.10) we have

$$G(t) = O(t^{-\Delta})$$
 (3.11a)

and from (3.8)

$$Q(t) = O(t^{-1})$$
 (3.11b)

This is in agreement with Itoh (1972). Using Stieltges transforms we can show

$$\int_{L_1} \frac{Q(t) G(t) dt}{t + \omega} = O(\omega^{-1}) + O(\omega^{-1-\Delta})$$
 (3.12)

Chapter 9: A Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating Into a Homogeneous Half-Space

1. Introduction

This chapter is directed to the solution of a parallel plate waveguide radiating into a homogeneous half space. This problem has been solved for the case of a dielectric slab by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969), (1971). The solution as given here has three significant areas of research which warrant the inclusion of the problem: (1) it is believed that the method of formulation and solution is more systematic and simpler to understand than Kostelnicek; (2) the details of solving the integral equation efficiently are looked into carefully; and (3) the results are physically interesting and have not been obtained before this work.

2. Formulation of the Equations

Consider the TM solution of the geometry shown in Figure 9.2.1. For simplicity we will assume TEM incidence, the general TM solution follows directly.

From Chapter 8 we see that $T(\omega)$ is given by

$$T(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(\frac{K_o}{\omega - jk_o} - \int_{L_2} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \right)$$
 (2.1)

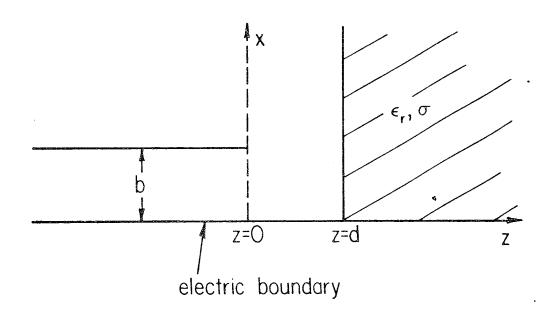


Fig. 9.2.1: Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Homogeneous Half Space

where

$$X(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)(\omega - jk_{0}) \Pi(\omega, \gamma_{n}) exp \left\{ \frac{b\sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{0}^{2}}}{\pi} \left(ln \left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{0}^{2}}}{k_{0}} \right) + \frac{j\pi}{2} \right) \right\}$$

and

$$H_1(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{\omega b}{\pi} \left(1 - C_e - \ln\left(\frac{k_o b}{2\pi}\right)\right) - \frac{j\omega b}{2}\right\}$$

 K_{o} is known from (i) of section 2.2 of Chapter 5 to be

$$T(jk_0) = -2jk_0b = K_0 \left(\frac{X(\omega)}{\omega - jk_0}\right)_{\omega = jk}$$

where $B_{m}^{(o)} = 1$.

From (iii) of section 2.2 of Chapter 8 we have

$$T^{-}(\omega) - T^{+}(\omega) = -2\pi j \omega \sin \lambda b A(\lambda), \omega \epsilon L_{\gamma}$$

but for $\omega \in L_1$ and (2.2.16) of Chapter 6 we have

$$T^{-}(\omega) = T^{+}(\omega) e^{\int 2\lambda b}$$

thus

$$T^{-}(\omega) = -\pi\omega e^{j\lambda b} A(\lambda) \qquad (2.2)$$

Also from (2.2.19) of Chapter 8 we have

$$g^{(2)}(\omega) = \omega \sin \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda), \quad \omega \in L_2$$
 (2.3)

But the spectral densities $A^O(\lambda)$ and $A(\lambda)$ are related by the reflection coefficient

$$A^{O}(\lambda) = A(\lambda) R(\lambda)$$
 (2.4)

where

$$R(\lambda) = \frac{\varepsilon \omega - \Gamma}{\varepsilon \omega + \Gamma} e^{-2\omega d}$$

where

$$\Gamma = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - \varepsilon k_0^2}$$

where the branch of Γ is chosen such that $\text{Re}\Gamma \ge 0$.

Conduction losses in the dielectric are considered by using the complex permittivity

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_{r} - j 120\pi\sigma/k_{o}$$
 (2.4)

It should be noted than any layered media can be taken care of by replacing $R(\lambda)$ by its appropriate value. However, care should be taken that any new singularities introduced (i.e. poles of $R(\lambda)$) are properly taken into account. For example, when Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969) solved the case of a slab they found it necessary to shift the path of integration from L_1 to a horizontal path from jk_0 to ∞ + jk_0 . A detailed study of the variation of the half space solution in the first quadrant revealed that the original path, L_1 , was the be best choice, since it apparently gave the smoothest solution.

Before proceeding it will prove to be convenient to change ω to $-\omega$ in the integral of (2.1) giving

$$T(\omega) = X(\omega) \left\{ \frac{K_{O.}}{\omega - Jk_{O.}} - \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t)(t-\omega)} \right\}$$

Now we may combine (2.2), (2.3) and (2.4) to give the following integral equation for $g^{(2)}(-\omega)$, $\omega \epsilon L_1$.

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{\sin \lambda b}{\pi} R(\lambda) e^{-j\lambda b} X^{-}(\omega) \cdot \left(\frac{K_{0}}{\omega - jk_{0}} - \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t)(t+\omega)}\right), \quad \omega \in L_{1}$$
(2.5)

Considering the change of variable

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{K_0 \sin \lambda b R(\lambda)}{\pi(\omega - jk_0)} e^{-j\lambda b} X^{-}(\omega) G(\omega)$$

we transform (2.5) to

$$G(\omega) = 1 + (\omega - jk_0) \int_{L_1} \frac{Q(t)G(t) dt}{t + \omega}, \quad \omega \in L_1 \quad (2.6)$$

where

$$Q(\omega) = \frac{-K}{\pi} \frac{\sin \lambda b R(\lambda)e}{(\omega - jk_0)} \frac{X^{-}(\omega)}{X(-\omega)}$$

This is the equation derived by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1971) except for a slight change in notation.

The asymptotic behavior of G(t) is found by examining (2.3) and (2.4). It is easily shown that

$$Q(\omega) = 0\left(\frac{e^{-2\omega d}}{\omega}\right), |\omega| \to \infty \qquad (2.7)$$

and

$$G(\omega) = O(1)$$
, $|\omega| \rightarrow \infty$ (2.8)

Because of the exponential behavior of (2.7) it is not necessary to include the asymptotic behavior of $G(\omega)$ in the solution and the integration limit on L_1 can be truncated at a finite value.

The fields are readily derived from $T(\omega)$ upon having found $G(\omega)$; in particular the TEM reflection coefficient is given by

$$B_{o} = \frac{-T(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}b}$$
 (2.9)

3. Numerical Solution

The solution of (2.6) requires a careful examination of the integrals which must be approximated numerically.

An examination of the kernel of (2.6) reveals the following:

- (i) $Q(\omega)$ has zeroes of second order at $\omega = \gamma_{nb}$, n = 1, 2....
- (ii) $Q(\omega)$ has a zero in the complex plane whenever $R(\lambda) = 0$. For a half space this occurs at the quasi-Brewster angle given by:

$$\omega = \gamma \simeq \frac{-\epsilon_r' k_o}{2(1+\epsilon_r)^{3/2}} + \int \sqrt{\frac{1}{1+\epsilon_r}} k_o$$

where $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_r - j\varepsilon_r'$ and we have assumed $\varepsilon_r'/\varepsilon_r << 1$. Note that since $\mathrm{Re}(\gamma)$ must be greater than zero on the top sheet, for $\varepsilon_r' \neq 0$, this root is on the improper Riemann sheet (though it is quite close to the branch cut).

(iii) Due to the term sin λ b, $Q(\omega)$ goes to zero as

Hence equation (2.6) is a "smooth" equation. However, upon finding $G(\omega)$ we desire to calculate the TEM reflection coefficient which in turn involves an evaluation of the integral

. The contract of the contract of the second section
$$(3.1)$$

From (iii) we see that as $\omega \to jk$ the integrand will behave as $1/\sqrt{\omega-jk}$. Hence, careful attention should be given to the branch point $\omega = jk$.

It should also be noted that the accuracy of the results will not be changed by the definition of the un-known in (2.6) since the accuracy is determined by the order of the total integrand not just the unknown.

The integration was broken into a sequence of finite intervals with the end points being the waveguide propagation constants, γ_{nb} . The origin was also included as an end point. Since the first segment included the branc point the following Gaussian quadrature (Abromowitz and Stegnn, 1965) was used:

$$\int_{a}^{b} \frac{f(y) dy}{\sqrt{b-y}} = \sqrt{b-a} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \omega_{i} f(y_{i})$$
 (***)

where

$$y_i = a + (b-a)x_i$$

where $x_i = 1 - \xi_i^2$ and ξ_i is the ith positive zero of $P_{2n}(x)$ and $w_i = 2w_i^{(2n)}$ where $w_i^{(2n)}$ are the Gaussian weights of order 2n. (3.2) allows the square root singularity to be taken care of quite satisfactorily hence allowing a good approximation of (3.1). Although this effectively increases the order of the integrand of (2.6) slightly, no degradation of convergence was observed.

Between the remaining end points regular Gaussian quadrature was employed.

It should be noted that Itoh and Mittra (1971) used a pulse function basis with the exception of the vicinity of the branch point.

4. Numerical Results

The solution of (2.6) was implemented on a CDC3800 digital computer with a program called SINGAUS. A complete

listing of this program is found in Appendix G. The infinite product was evaluated in s similar manner to the
multiple product used for closed region problems discussed
in Appendix D.

Table 9.4.1 illustrates the convergence of the TEM reflection coefficient as a function of the number of intervals, N, and the number of points, M_n , within the nth interval for the case of $k_0b = 1.2566$, $k_0d = 3.14159$, $\epsilon_r = 10$, $\sigma/k_0 = 0.001$.

Table 9.4.1 Convergence of Reflection Coefficient for a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space.

| N | <u>M</u> 1 | M ₂ | <u>M</u> 3 | Во | | |
|----|-----------------|----------------|------------|--------|--------|--|
| 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0.5397 | 63.22° | |
| 3 | \mathcal{Y}_4 | 4 | <u> 1</u> | 0.4366 | 65.51° | |
| 3 | 8 | 4 | 4 | 0.4385 | 65.46° | |
| 3 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 0.4379 | 66.11° | |
| 3 | 16 | 8 | 8 | 0.4385 | 66.14° | |
| 3 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 0.4386 | 66.16° | |
| wi | th no | dielec | tric | 0.2846 | 88.42° | |

Note that the reflection coefficient converges quite fast and four place accuracy is achieved with as few as 32 matching points. However, quite acceptable accuracy is achieved with as few as 16 points. This appears to be a considerable savings over Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969), although they used an alternate path of integration on which the solution varied greater than on the path L_1 , though they did avoid the poles of $R(\lambda)$.

Figure 9.4.1 illustrates the behavior of $G(\omega)$ for the example whose results are given in Table 9.4.1.

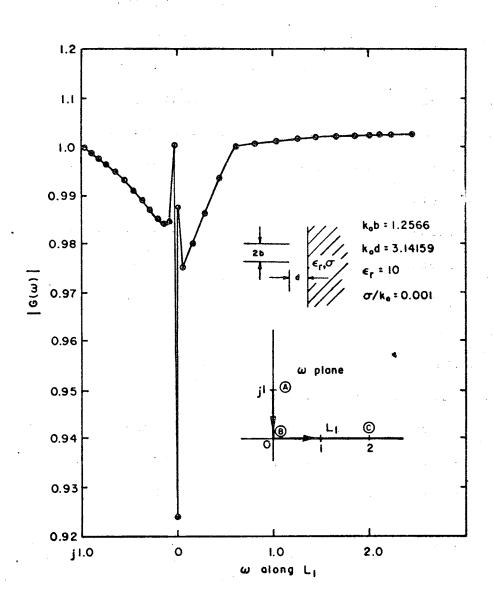


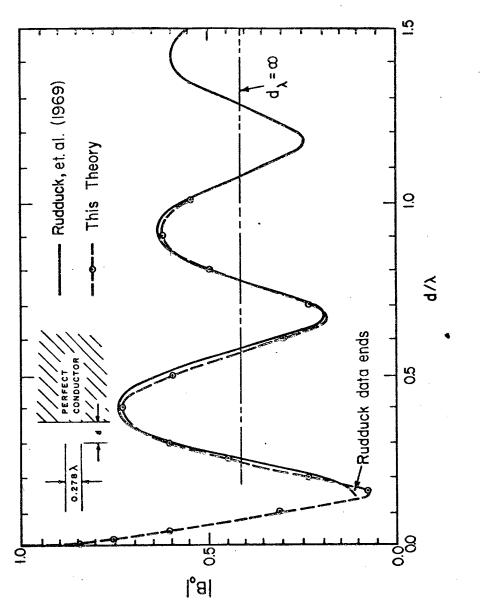
Fig. 9.4.1: Variation of the Perturbation Spectrum along \mathbf{L}_1

Note that the asymptotic behavior given by (2.8) is quickly achieved beyond $\omega=0.6$. The most radical behavior occurs near the origin; however, even this change is less than 10%. Notice that $G(\omega)$ is quite well behaved at $\omega=0.3$ which is the location of the pseudo-Brewster angle. Note also that $G(\omega)$ is well behaved near $\omega=\gamma_{1b}$. The phase of $G(\omega)$ was a maximum of S^{O} near the origin, with a nominal value of less than a degree.

Another case is given in Table 9.4.2 where the waveguide width has been increased to $k_0b = 4.7124$ and the distance from waveguide to half space has been decreased to $k_0d = 0.5$ ($d \simeq 0.08\lambda$). The parameters of the dielectric are still $\epsilon_r = 10$ and $\sigma/k_0 = 0.001$.

Table 9.4.2 Convergence of Reflection Coefficient for a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space.

| N | M_{1} | M ₂ | M ₃ | М ₄ | M ₅ | M ₆ | M ₇ | B | |
|---|---------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------|---------|
| 6 | 2 | 2 | | | 2 | | | 0.4333 | -49.68° |
| 6 | 4 | 4 | | | 14 | 14 | | 0.4410 | -50.16° |
| _ | 8 | | | | | | | 0.4408 | -50.13° |
| 6 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | | 0.4408 | -50.13° |
| 6 | 16 | 8 | 8 | 14 | 14 | 4 | | 0.4408 | -50.13° |
| 7 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | - 8 | 8 | 0.4408 | -50.12° |
| | W | ith | no d | iele | ctri | · | | 0.0616 | 82.62° |



Reflection Coefficient of Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Perfectly Conducting Sheet as a Function of the Distance from the Aperture to the Confactor F18. 9.4.2:

More matching intervals are necessary because the waveguide width is greater as well as the distance, d, being smaller. Four place accuracy is again achieved with excellent results being achieved with as few as 24 matching points.

The solution of a related problem of the radiation of a parallel plate waveguide into a perfectly conducting sheet has been solved using wedge diffraction techniques (Ruddack, Tsai, and Burnside, 1969). Figure 9.4.2 illustrates good agreement between this theory (with R $(\lambda) = e^{-2\gamma d}$) and the wedge diffraction results. However, it should be expected that the difference would be greater when d/λ is less than 0.15 λ . (It should be noted that Ruddack's data is subject to the error of reading graphical data.)

Figure 9.4.3 shows the variation of the reflection coefficient of a 0.4 λ waveguide as a function of distance to the half space for three sets of permittivity and conductivity. Note that quite significant deviations from the free space case are observed, with the deviations becoming larger as the distance, d, is decreased.

Figure 9.4.4 illustrates the variation of the reflection coefficient of a 0.4 λ waveguide as a function of the half space parameters at a constant distance, d, of 0.1 λ . Note that quite significant changes in the reflection coefficient as the permittivity and conductivity vary. In order to more fully understand Figure 9.4.4, Figure

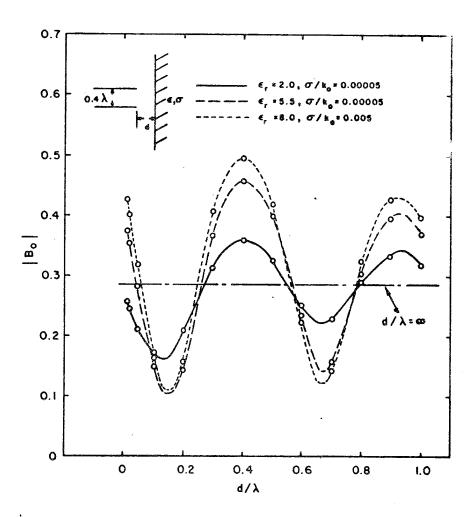


Fig. 9.4.3a: Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of Distance and Dielectric Parameters

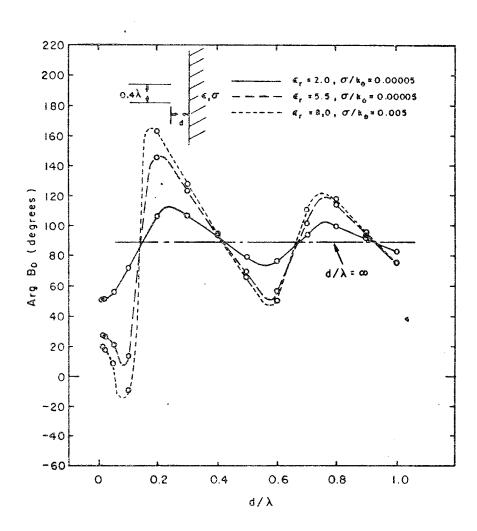
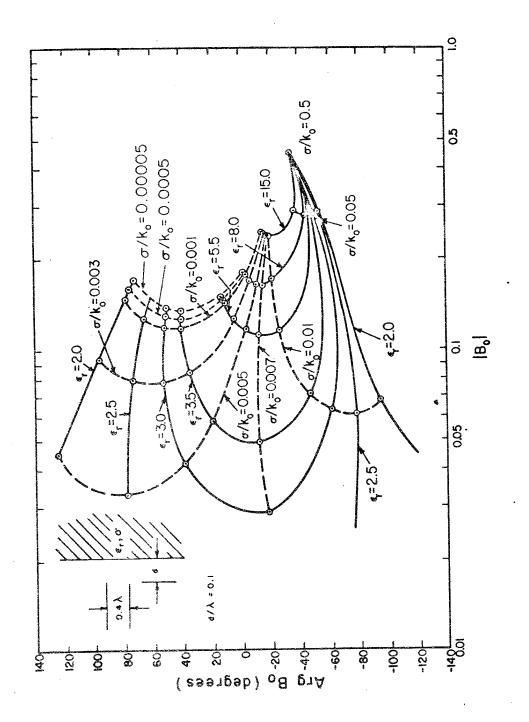
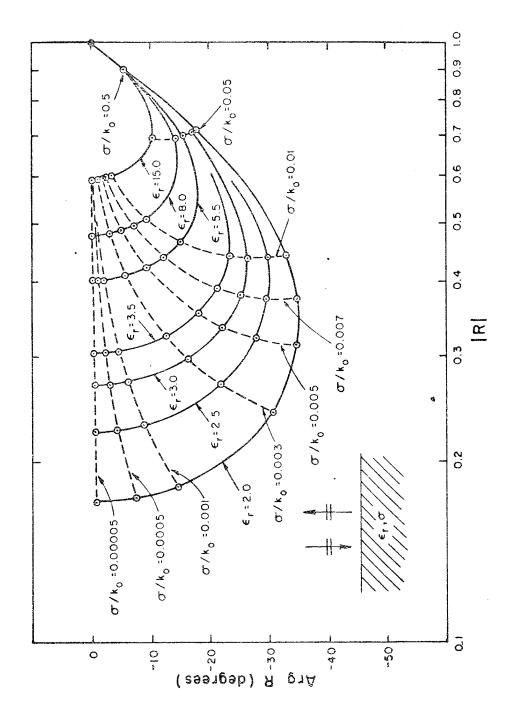


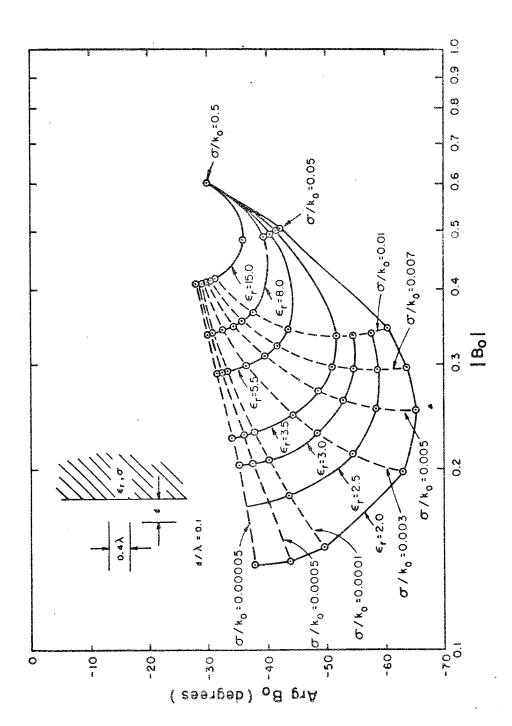
Fig. 9.4.3b: Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of Distance and Dielectric Parameters



Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters Fig. 9.4.4:



Fresnel Current Reflection Coefficient as a Function of Dielectric Parameters Fig. 9.4.5:



13.118.1. I Plate Waveguide Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters Matched Reflection Coefficient Fig. 9.4.6:

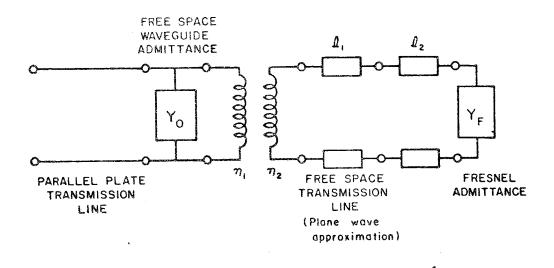


Fig. 9.4.7: Approximate Equivalent Circuit

9.4.5 illustrates the variation of the Fresnel reflection coefficient at the half space interface for normal incidence. Figure 9.4.6 shows the data of Figure 9.4.4. matched to the impedance of a single isolated waveguide radiating into free space. The similarity of the sa of Figure 9.4.6 with the Fresnel reflection coefficien. s quite clear. This similarity suggests that the free space admittance appears in parallel with an admittance which depends on d, ε , and σ . Figure 9.4.7 suggests approximate equivalent circuit for a waveguide radiating into a half space. The transformer allows for the scale change and is dependent on the waveguide width 2b and the distance d primarily. The line length, ℓ_1 , is just the physical electrical distance 2k d. The second line length, ℓ_2 , is a rather complicated function of ϵ , σ , and d. For a given height it is possible to arrive at empirical formulas for the circuit parameters. would suggest that the more complicated structures such as rectangular and circular waveguides radiating into a half space can be modeled with approximate equivalent circuits, with the parameters of the circuits being determined experimentally.

1. Introduction

Waveguide phased arrays have received much attention in the last few years because of properties such as fast scan capabilities, multimode operation, and reliability. Perhaps the easiest analysis of planar phased arrays has been the application of Floquet's theorem to an infinitely periodic array (Amitay, Galindo, and Wu; 1972). However, many arrays are small enough that such an analysis is not valid. For finite arrays, one common method of analysis has been the moment method. One common approximation in these studies has been the assumption of an infinitely large perfectly conducting ground plane (or some approximation to it). It is the purpose of this chapter to use the modified function theoretic technique to study a finite phased array with no ground plane. It should be noted that this analysis could also be easily applied to a finite array with a ground plane of finite or infinite extent.

2. Formulation of the Equations

2.1 Introduction

For simplicity in the solution we will assume that the array has a symmetry plane parallel to the waveguide walls. This is not a limitation of the theory but is only

a convenience. The solution of a completely aperiodic array can be found in a straightforward manner.

Thus we will consider the solution of the two problems illustrated in Figures 10.2.1 and 10.2.2, the only difference being the symmetry wall boundary condition.

2.2 The Electric Symmetry Wall

Figure 10.2.1 also illustrates the auxiliary prob. .

Note that the problem can be further separated in wo kinds of problems: (1) the interior problem, and (2) the exterior problem. The interior problem is the one associated with the first N-1 plates, and is solved using the theory of Chapter 2 for modifications of the bifurcated waveguide. The exterior problem is the one associated with the Nth plate. This is seen to be just semi-infinite waveguide with an internal modification. With these thoughts in mind we can write the following N holomorphic functions:

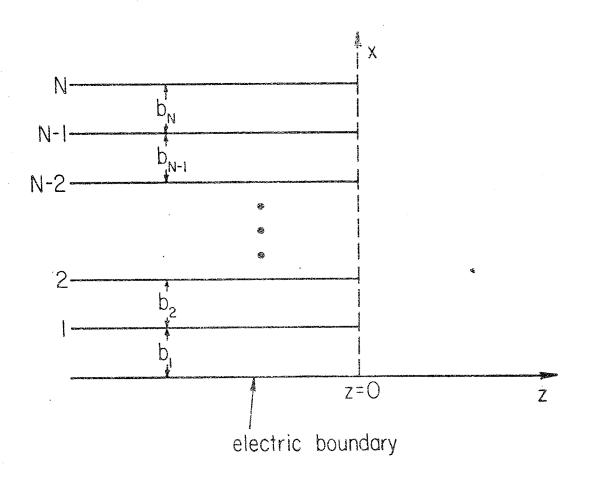
$$T_{1}(\omega) = F_{1}(\omega) \left(K_{0}^{(1)} - (\omega - jk_{0}) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{1,R}}{\omega + \gamma_{n,c_{1}}} \right), \qquad (2.2.1)$$

$$T_{M}(\omega) = F_{M}(\omega) \left\{ K_{O}^{(M)} - (\omega - jk_{O}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{M,R}}{\omega + \gamma_{n,c_{M}}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{M,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n,c_{M}}} \right\} \right\},$$

$$(2.2.2)$$

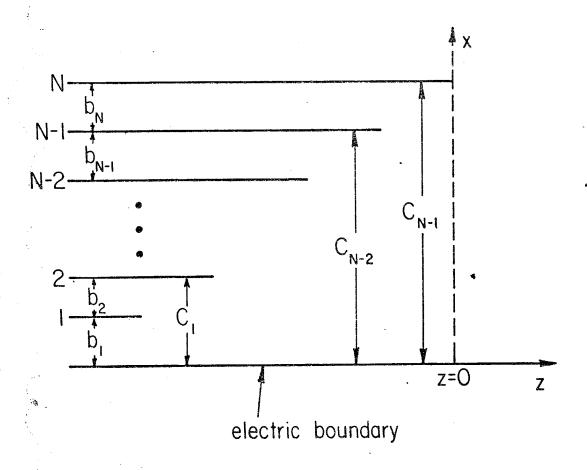
where M = 2,3,...,N-1, and

$$T_{N}(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(K_{O}^{N} + (\omega - jk_{O}) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}} \right), \qquad (2.2.3)$$



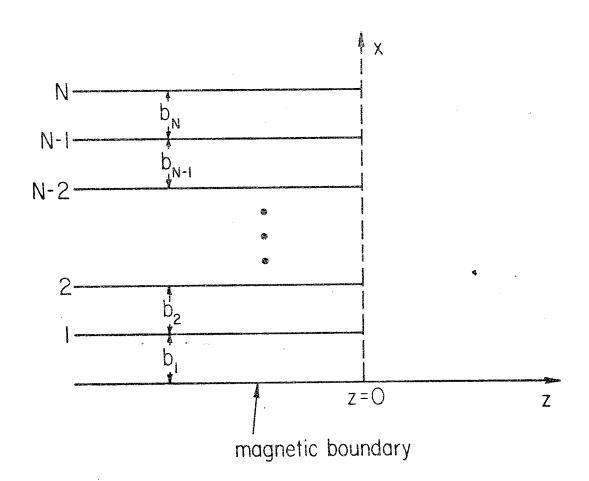
(a) Final Geometry

Fig. 10.2.1: The Finite Array with an Electric Symmetry Boundary



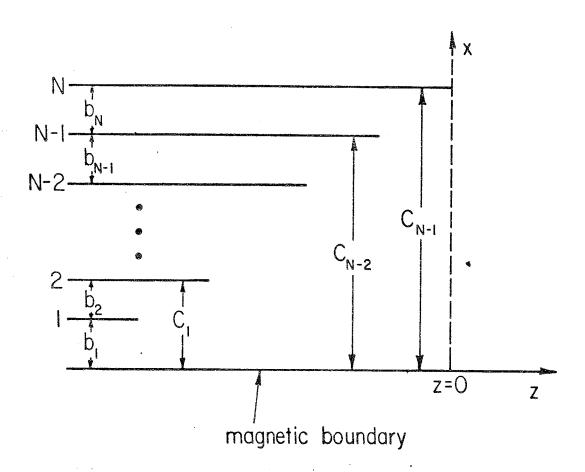
(b) Auxiliary Geometry

Fig. 10.2.1: The Finite Array with an Electric Symmetry Boundary



(a) Final Geometry

Fig. 10.2.2: The Finite Array with a Magnetic Symmetry Boundary



(b) Auxiliary Geometry

Fig. 10.2.2: The Finite Array with a Magnetic Symmetry Boundary

In equations (2.2.1) and (2.2.2), $F(\omega)$ is given by

$$F_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega) \frac{\Pi(\omega, \gamma_{b_{1}}) \Pi(\omega, \gamma_{b_{2}})}{\Pi(\omega, \gamma_{c_{1}})}$$

where

$$H_{1}(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{-\omega}{\pi} \left[b_{1} \ln b_{1}/c_{1} + b_{2} \ln b_{2}/c_{1}\right]\right\}$$

an d

$$F_{M}(\omega) = H_{M}(\omega) \frac{\Pi(\omega, \gamma_{c_{M-1}}) \Pi(\omega, \gamma_{b_{M+1}})}{\Pi(\omega, \gamma_{CM})}$$

where

$$H_{M}(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{-\omega}{\pi} \left[c_{M-1} \ln c_{M-1} / c_{M} + b_{M+1} \ln b_{M+1} / c_{M}\right]\right\}$$

In equation (2.2.3), $X(\omega)$ is the homogeneous solution given in Chapter 8 for a semi-infinite waveguide with a half height of c_{N-1} .

From Chapter 2, we see that we can write the following equations:

$$(-1)^{n+1}T_{M}(-\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}) = \gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}c_{M-1}[K_{n}^{M-1,R}]^{-1}g_{n}^{M-1,R},$$

$$(2.2.4)$$

where M = 2,3,..., N-1, and

$$K_n^{M,R} = \frac{-n\pi}{c_M} \sin \frac{n\pi c_{M-1}}{c_M} / [F_M(-\gamma_n, c_M)(\gamma_n, c_M + jk_0)]$$

Also for M = 2,3,..., N-2, we have

RES[T_M,
$$\gamma_{n,c_{M}}] = \frac{-n\pi}{c_{M}} \sin \frac{n\pi c_{M-1}}{c_{M}} [K_{n}^{M+1,L}] g_{n}^{M+1,L}$$
(2.2.5)

where

$$K_n^{M,L} = (-1)^n \gamma_{n,c_{M-1}^2} c_{M-1} / [F_M^{(n)} (\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}}) (\gamma_{n,c_{M-1}} - jk_0)]$$

where $F_M^{(n)}(\gamma_n,c_{M-1})$ implies that the zero at γ_n,c_{M-1} is omitted from the infinite product. For the case M=1 we have only a single equation:

$$RES[T_1, \gamma_{n,c_1}] = \frac{-n\pi}{c_1} \sin \frac{n\pi b_1}{c_1} [K_n^2, L]^{-1} g_n^2, L$$
(2.2.6)

(2.2.6) is similar to (2.2.5) with the only difference being that $T_1(\omega)$ has only a single perturbation sum. For the case M = N-1, (2.2.5) becomes

$$RES[T_{N-1}, \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}] = \frac{-n\pi}{c_{N-1}} \sin \frac{n\pi c_{N-2}}{c_{N-1}} [K_n^M, L(o)]^{-1} g_n^M, L$$
where
(2.2.7)

$$K_n^{N,L(o)} = (-1)^n \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}^2} c_{N-1} / [X^{(n)}(\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}})$$

$$\cdot (\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}} - jk_0)]$$

where $X^{(n)}(\gamma_n, c_{N-1})$ implies that the zero at γ_n, c_{N-1} is omitted from the infinite product. (2.2.7) is found by using property (i) of Chapter 8 in conjunction with the results of Chapter 2. From property (v) of Chapter 8 and the results of Chapter 2, we also have that

$$T_{N}(-\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}) = (-1)^{n} \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}} c_{N-1} [K_{n}^{N-1,R}]^{-1} g_{n}^{N-1,R}$$
(2.2.8)

Equations (2.2.4)-(2.2.8) represent an infinite set of simultaneous equations for the perturbation coefficients, $g_n^{M,L}$ $(M=2,3,\ldots,N)$ and $g_n^{M,R}$ $(M=1,2,\ldots,N-1)$. Note that the recession of plates in the solution of the closed region case is opposite to the recession chosen in Chapters 3 and 4. However, this is only a minor change as will be discussed later in this chapter.

For this particular problem, $K_0^{(M)}$ (M = 1,2,..., N) are known and can be related to the incident TEM modal coefficients as follows (ref. Chapter 2):

$$K_0^{(1)} = 2jk_0b_2[U_1 - B_{0,2}^{(0)}]/F_1(jk_0) \qquad (2.2.9)$$

where

$$U_1 = \frac{b_2}{c_1} B_{0,2}^{(0)} + \frac{b_1}{c_1} B_{0,1}^{(0)}$$

and where $B_{0,n}^{(0)}$ is the incident TEM modal coefficient from the nth waveguide above the symmetry boundary. Also

$$K_0^{(2)} = 2jk_0b_3[U_2-B_0,3]$$

where

$$U_2 = \frac{b_3}{c_2} B_{0,3}^{(0)} + \frac{c_1}{c_2} U_1$$

and in general for M up to N-1, we have

$$K_o^{(M)} = 2jk_ob_{M+1}[U_M - B_{o,M+1}^{(o)}]$$
 (2.2.10)

where

$$U_{M} = \frac{b_{M+1}}{c_{M}} B_{O,M+1}^{(O)} + \frac{c_{M-1}}{c_{M}} U_{M-1}$$

And for the case M=N, we have

$$K_{\circ}^{(N)} = 2jk_{\circ} c_{N-1} U_{N-1}/X(jk_{\circ})$$
 (2.2.11)

where

$$U_{N-1} = \frac{b_N}{c_{N-1}} B_{0,n}^{(0)} + \frac{c_{N-2}}{c_{N-1}} U_{N-2}$$

In order to solve (2.2.4)-(2.2.8) efficiently we are motivated to investigate the asymptotic behavior of the various perturbation coefficients. This procedure is

essentially identical to that discussed in Chapters 3 and 4 and thus only the results will be presented.

As in Chapters 3 and 4, we can find that only a single asymptotic perturbation term is necessary for the right perturbation terms, that is, we will replace $\mathbf{g}_n^{M,R}$ by the following for $n > N^{M,R}$.

$$g_n^{M,R} = \overline{g}^{M,R}(-1)^n n^{-1} \sin \frac{n\pi c_{N-1}}{c_M}$$
 (2.2.12)

where M = 1,2,...,N-1. Notice that since $c_{M-1} = c_M + b_{M+1}$, (2.2.12) can also be written

$$g_n^{M,R} = -g^{M,R} n^{-1} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{M+1}}{c_M}$$

which is in agreement with equation (3.3) of Chapter 4.

We again find that multi-term asymptotic expansions for the left perturbation terms are necessary to satisfy all of the edge conditions explicitly, namely for $n > N^{M}$, we will replace g_n^{M} , by the following:

$$g_{n}^{M,L} = \overline{g}_{1}^{M,L} (-1)^{n} n^{-1} \sin \frac{n\pi b_{1}}{c_{M-1}}$$

$$\overline{g}_{2}^{M,L} (-1)^{n} n^{-1} \sin n\pi \frac{(b_{1}^{+}b_{2}^{+})}{c_{M-1}^{-}} + \cdots + (2.2.13)$$

$$\overline{g}_{M-1}^{M,L} (-1)^{n} n^{-1} \sin n\pi \frac{(b_{1}^{+}b_{2}^{+}\cdots b_{M-1}^{-})}{c_{M-1}^{-}}$$

where M = 2, 3, ... N.

Upon the substitution of (2.2.12) and (2.2.13) into equations (2.2.1)-(2.2.3) and the subsequent substitution into (2.2.4)-(2.2.8) we arrive at an efficiently truncated

linear system of equations for the perturbation coefficients.

However, we must still decide how to choose the additional equations for the asymptotic perturbation coefficients. We may, however, use the results of the truncation study of Chapters 3 and 4, and use what we call the hybrid truncation method. Essentially this choice of truncation chooses the "n+1 equation" of equations (2.2.4), (2.2.6), and (2.2.7). However, (2.2.5) is asymptotically degenerate for reasons outlined in Chapter 4. Hence, the true asymptotic form of (2.2.5) is used, yielding M+1 equations.

For brevity, we will not give the explicit form of the equations. The interested reader is instead referred to Chapter 4.

Upon finding the perturbation coefficients, the waveguide fields as well as the fields in free space are
readily found using the properties of the functions as
given in Chapters 2 and 8. In particular, the reflected
TEM modal coefficients are given by:

$$B_{o,M} = \frac{T_{M-1}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}b_{M}} + \frac{T_{N}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}c_{N-1}} - \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} \frac{T_{n}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}c_{n-1}} (2.2.14)$$

for M = 2,3,...,N. The summation is only used for $M \leq N-1$. However, for the case M=1 we have

$$B_{0,1} = \frac{-T_{1}(-jk_{0})}{2jk_{0}b_{1}} + \frac{T_{N}(-jk_{0})}{2jk_{0}c_{N-1}} - \sum_{n=2}^{N-1} \frac{T_{n}(-jk_{0})}{2jk_{0}c_{n-1}} (2.2.15)$$

In both (2.2.14) and (2.2.15), $B_{0,n}$ is the reflected TEM modal coefficient in the nth waveguide above the symmetry plane.

Other waveguide modal quantities can be easily found by recourse to the properties of the canonical function given in Chapters 2 and 8 and the use of the auxiliary geometry.

The far field radiation pattern is also of interest for a finite array. From equation (2.2.16) of Chapter 8, and property (iii) of the same chapter, we can easily find that the spectral density for z > 0 is given by

$$A(\lambda) = \frac{-T_{N}^{-}(\omega)}{T\omega} e^{-J\lambda c_{N-1}}, \quad \omega \in L_{1}$$
 (2.2.16)

Honce,

$$\phi_{A}(x,z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{T_{N}^{-}(\omega)}{\omega} e^{-J\lambda c_{N-1}} e^{-\omega z} \cos \lambda x \, d\lambda \, (2.2.17)$$

This integral can easily be evaluated asymptotically in the far field using the method of steepest descents (Mittra and Lee, 1971) to give

$$\phi_{A}(x,z) \simeq \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{k_{o}r}} e^{-j(k_{o}r-\pi/4)} \left(\frac{j}{2\pi}\right) \cdot T_{N}^{-}(jk_{o}\cos\theta)e^{-jk_{o}c_{N-1}} \sin\theta \qquad (2.2.18)$$

where θ is the polar angle measured from the z axis. It is interesting to note that the factor $\cos \theta$, which is present for an infinite array problem, is not present in (2.2.18).

2.3 The Magnetic Symmetry Wall

Figure 10.2.2 illustrates the geometry of interest in this section as well as the auxiliary problem. The two basic components of the solution are: (1) the bifurcated waveguide with a magnetic symmetry boundary, and (2) a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide with a magnetic symmetry wall. The first problem's solution has been given in Appendix E, while the second problem's solution has been given in Chapter 8.

From Appendix E, we can easily find that for the first plate we have

$$T_1(\omega) = F_1(\omega) \left(K_0^{(1)} + (\omega - jk_0) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{1,R}}{\omega + \gamma_{2n-1,2c_1}} \right) (2.3.1)$$

where

$$F_1(\omega) = H_1(\omega) \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1-\omega/\gamma_{2n-1,2b_1})(1-\omega/\gamma_{nb_2})}{(1-\omega/\gamma_{2n-1,2c_1})}$$

where

$$H_1(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{-\omega}{\pi}\left(b_1 \ln \frac{b_1}{c_1} + b_2 \ln \frac{b_2}{c_1} - 2b_2 \ln 2\right)\right\}$$

And in general we have for the Mth plate (M = 2,3,...,N-1)

$$T_{M}(\omega) = F_{M}(\omega) \left\{ K_{O}^{(M)} + (\omega - jk_{O}) \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{M}, R}{\omega + \gamma_{2n-1, 2c_{M}}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{M}, L}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1, 2c_{M-1}}} \right\} \right\}$$
(2.3.2)

where

$$F_{M}(\omega) = H_{M}(\omega) \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1-\omega/\gamma_{2n-1}, 2c_{M-1})(1-\omega/\gamma_{2n-1}, 2b_{M+1})}{(1-\omega/\gamma_{2n-1}, 2c_{M})}$$

where

$$H_{M}(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{-\omega}{\pi}\left(c_{M-1}\ln \frac{c_{M-1}}{c_{M}} + b_{M+1}\ln \frac{b_{M+1}}{c_{M}} - 2b_{M+1}\ln 2\right)\right\}$$

For the Nth semi-infinite plate, we use the results of Chapter 8 and easily find that

$$T_{N}(\omega) = X(\omega) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1,2c}}$$
 (2.3.3)

where $X(\omega)$ is the homogeneous solution of the semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide with a magnetic symmetry wall.

We may arrive at simultaneous equations for the perturbation coefficients by a similar manner used in the previous section and in Chapter 2. That is, we require that the expressions for the same modal coefficient in a given region of the auxiliary problem be consistent, whichever holomorphic function is used.

Hence we may find for M = 1,2,...,N-2

RES[T_M,
$$\gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M}}$$
] = $k_{n,c_{M}}$ cos $k_{n,c_{M}}$ c_{M-1} [K_n^{M+1,L}]⁻¹ g_{n} (2.3.4)

where

$$K_{n}^{M,L} = \frac{(-1)^{n} \gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M-1}}^{2} c_{M-1}}{F_{M}^{(n)} (\gamma_{2n-1,c_{M-1}}) (\gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M-1}} - jk_{0})}$$

and for M = 2, 3, ..., N-2

$$(-1)^{n}T_{M}(-\gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M-1}}) = \gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M-1}}c_{M-1}[K_{n}^{M-1,R}]^{-1}g_{n}^{M-1,R}$$
(2.3.5)

where

$$K_{n}^{M,R} = \frac{k_{n,c_{M}} \cos k_{n,c_{M}} c_{M-1}}{F_{M}(-\gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M}})(\gamma_{2n-1,2c_{M}}+jk_{o})}$$
(2.3.6)

And from the open region part of the auxiliary geometry we find

RES[T_{N-1},
$$\gamma_{2n-1}$$
, $2c_{N-1}$] = k_n, c_{N-1} cos k_n, c_{N-1} c_{N-2}
• $[K_n^N, L(0)]^{-1}$ $g_n^N, L(2.3.7)$

where

$$K_n^{N,L(0)} = \frac{(-1)^{n+1} \gamma_{2n-1, 2c_{N-1}} c_{N-1}}{\chi^{(n)} (\gamma_{2n-1, 2c_{N-1}})}$$

Note that for this particular problem that $K_{_{\hbox{\scriptsize O}}}^{\left(\,M\right)}$ is known and given by

$$K_o^{(M)} = -2jk_ob_{M+1} B_{o,M+1}^{(o)} / F_M(jk_o)$$
 (2.3.8)

where M = 2, ..., N-1 and where $B_{0,M+1}^{(0)}$ is the incident TEM modal coefficient from the M+1th waveguide. For M = 1, we have

$$K_0^{(1)} = -2jk_0b_2 B_{0,2}^{(0)}/F_1(jk_0)$$
 (2.3.9)

Note that the equations for these quantities are slightly different from equations (2.2.9) and (2.2.10) for the electric symmetry boundary case. This is due to the fact that the coupling regions of the auxiliary problem can not support a TEM mode.

Equations (2.3.4)-(2.3.7) constitute an infinite set of linear equations for the perturbation coefficients. In order to solve these equations efficiently, we investigate the asymptotic behavior of the perturbation coefficients. Again the procedure is identical to that discussed in Chapters 3 and 4.

For $n > N^{M,R}$ we will use

$$g_n^{M,R} = \overline{g}^{M,R} n^{-1} (-1)^n \cos k_{n,c_M} c_{M-1}$$
 (2.3.10)

for M = 1, 2, ..., N-1. Similarly, for $n > N^{M,L}$ we will use

$$g_{n}^{M,L} = \overline{g}_{1}^{M,L} n^{-1} (-1)^{n} \cos k_{n,c_{M-1}} b,$$

$$+ \overline{g}_{2}^{M,L} n^{-1} (-1)^{n} \cos k_{n,c_{M-1}} (b_{1}+b_{2}) \qquad (2.3.11)$$

$$+ \cdots + \overline{g}_{M-1}^{M,L} n^{-1} (-1)^{n} \cos k_{n,c_{M-1}} (b_{1}+b_{2}+\cdots+b_{M-1})$$

With these asymptotic expressions, it is not hard to show that all of the edge conditions are satisfied explicitly.

Upon the substitution of (2.3.10) and (2.3.11) into equation (2.3.1)-(2.3.3) and with the subsequent substitution into (2.3.4)-(2.3.7) we arrive at an efficiently truncated linear system of equations for the perturbation coefficients. The choice of the extra equations for the asymptotic perturbation coefficients is the hybrid truncation method discussed in the previous section.

For brevity, we will not give the explicit form of the equations. The interested reader is referred to Chapter 4.

Upon finding the perturbation coefficients, the waveguide fields as well as the fields in free space are readily found using the properties of the functions as given in Chapters 2 and 8. In particular, the reflected TEM modal coefficients are given by:

$$B_{o,M+1} = \frac{T_{M}(-jk_{o})}{2jk_{o}b_{M+1}}$$
 (2.3.12)

for M = 1, 2, ..., N-1, and where $B_{0,M+1}$ is the reflected TEM modal coefficient in the M+lth waveguide.

Other waveguide modal quantities can easily be found by recourse to the properties of the canonical function given in Chapters 2 and 8 and the use of the auxiliary geometry.

The far field radiation pattern is also, of interest for a finite array. From equation (2.3.4) of Chapter 8 and property (iii) of the same chapter we can easily find that the spectral density for $z \ge 0$ is given by

$$A(\lambda) = \frac{-T_{N}^{-}(\omega) e^{-j\lambda c} N-1}{\pi j \omega}$$
 (2.3.13)

Hence,

$$\phi_{A}(x,z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{0}^{\infty} T_{N}^{-}(\omega) e^{-j\lambda c} N^{-1} e^{-\gamma z} \sin \lambda x \, d\lambda (2.3.14)$$

This integral can easily be evaluated asymptotically in the far field using the method steepest descents (Mittra and Lee, 1971) to give

$$\phi_{A}(x,z) \simeq \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{k_{o}r}} e^{-j(k_{o}r - \pi/4)} \left(\frac{j}{2\pi}\right) T_{N}^{-}(jk_{o} \cos \theta)$$

$$e^{-jk_{o}c_{N-1} \sin \theta} \qquad (2.3.15)$$

3. Numerical Results

3.1 Introduction

The equations derived in sections 2.2 and 2.3 are implemented in two computer programs written for the CDC3800. Program OPEN1 solves the electric wall case while program OPEN2 solves the magnetic wall case. The listings of these computer programs are given in Appendix G.

3.2 The Electric Wall Case

This section presents the results of two studies. The first study is an examination of how the closed region results of Chapters 3 and 4 converge to the open region results. The second study considers the convergence of the open region results as a function of the number of perturbation coefficients.

Figures 10.3.2.1-10.3.2.3 illustrate the variation of the dominant mode parameters for a trifurcated wave-guide with $k_0b_2=1.27046$, $k_0b_1=0.41417$, and with k_0b_0 variable from 0.2 to 20. (Note that the indices of the trifurcated waveguide dimensions must have 1 added to them to correspond to the current notation.) The data calculated using the open region analysis is shown for comparison. Note that of all the parameters that the reflection coefficient of the waveguide with dimension $k_0b_1=0.41417$ converges the fastest. The phase is not

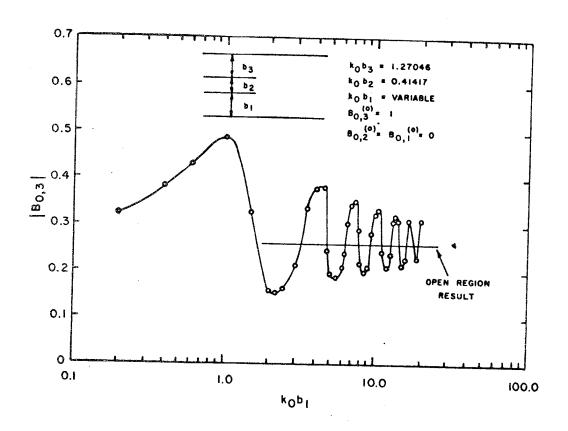


Fig. 10.3.2.1a: Reflection Coefficient of Trìfurcated Waveguide as a Function of $\textbf{b}_{\hat{1}}$

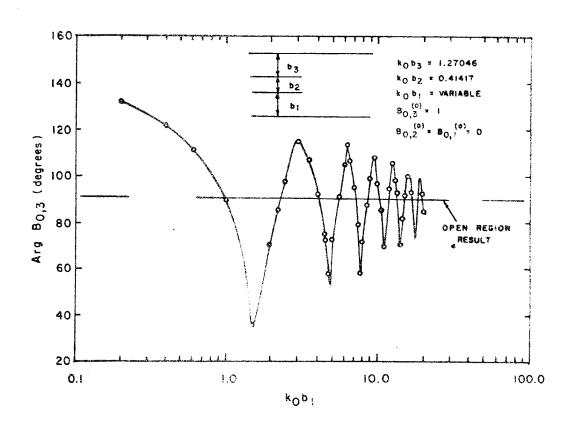


Fig. 10.3.2.1b: Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of \mathbf{b}_1

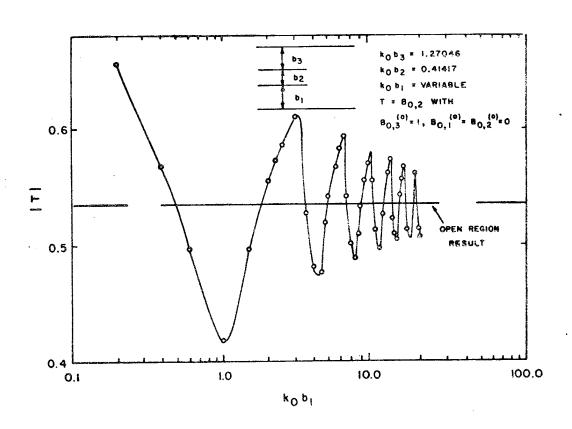
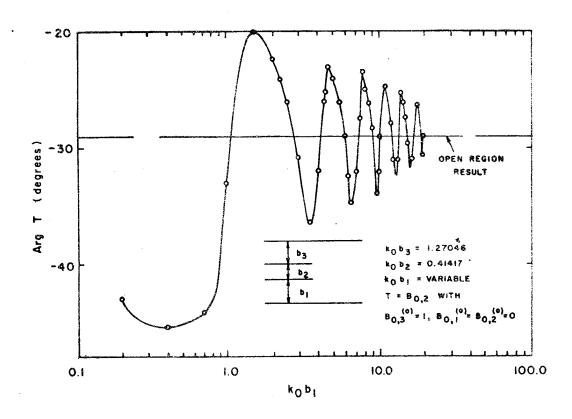


Fig. 10.3.2.2a: Coupling Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of \mathtt{b}_1



ं दुसे

Fig. 10.3.2.2b: Coupling Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of \mathtt{b}_1

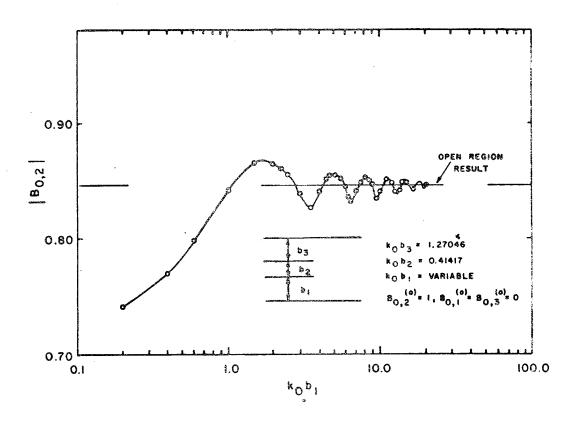


Fig. 10.3.2.3: Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide as a Function of bl

shown but converged even faster with a maximum deviation of only 4° from the open region solution.) However, the reflection coefficient of the waveguide with $k_{0}b_{2}$ = 1.27046 converges much slower. The same is true for the coupling coefficient. All of the data is observed to oscillate about the values computed using the open region analysis.

waveguide with $k_0b_2=1.27046$ converges much slower. The same is true for the coupling coefficient. All of the data is observed to oscillate about the values computed using the open region analysis.

This data reaffirms the conclusions reached by Mittra and Richardson (1970) that the closed region problem generally converges slowly to the open region problem

Table 10.3.2.1 illustrates the convergence of some dominant mode parameters as a function of the number of perturbation coefficients ($N_p \equiv N^{M,R} \equiv N^{M,L}$) using the open region analysis for the case of $k_0b_1 = 1.27046$, $k_0b_2 = 0.41417$.

Table 10.3.2.1 Convergence of Open Region Solution

$$\frac{N_{p}}{5} = \frac{B_{o,1}}{0.25909} = \frac{B_{o,2}}{90.222^{\circ}} = \frac{B_{o,2}}{0.84558} = \frac{155.26^{\circ}}{155.26^{\circ}} = \frac{0.53497}{0.53503} = \frac{28.770^{\circ}}{-28.771^{\circ}}$$

$$+_{T} = B_{o,2} \text{ with } B_{o,1}^{(o)} = 1, \text{ with } B_{o,1} = 1, \text{ with } B_{o,2} = 1.$$

Clearly five place accuracy is acheived with only a few perturbation coefficients for this case. However, the second waveguide has a width of only 0.066%. Table 10.3.2.2

Table 10.3.2.2 Convergence of Open Region Solution

| # Current | * N | + H H | Lee's Data | 15 | 13 | 11 | 9 | 7 | Sī | N | |
|------------|-----------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--|----|
| ⊁e f | ,3 with B | o,2 with B(o) = with B(o) = | , , , , | 0.2160 | 0.2195 | 0.2197 | 0.2198 | 0.2195 | 0.2181 | 0.2193 | В |
| lection c | | | 74.30 | 73.70 | 73.7° | 73.70 | 73.7° | 73.40 | 73.60 | ++ | |
| cefficient | | | 0.3032 | 0.3122 | 0.3120 | 0.3122 | 0.3126 | 0.3085 | 0.3148 | B 0 | |
| nts | | | | 75.10 | 73.80 | 73.80 | 73.80 | 73.80 | 74.10 | 73.60 | 24 |
| | | | 0.2503 | 0.2711 | 0.2700 | 0.2702 | 0.2720 | 0.8656 | 0.2766 | B 0 | |
| | | | 86.20 | 81.8° | 82.00 | 81.90 | 81.60 | 82.9° | 80.60' | Contraction of the contraction o | |
| | | | 0.1625 | 0.1665 | 0.1667 | 0.1668 | 0.1665 | 0.1649 | 0.1663 | T | |
| | | | 106.80 | -107,80 | -107.80 | -107.80 | -107.8° | -107.50 | -107.80 | AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER | |
| | | | 0.0864 | 0.0924 | 0.0929 | 0.0932 | 0.0923 | 0.0891 | 0.0918 | and the second construction of the second of | |
| | | | 77.70 | 74.8° | 74.70 | 74.6° | 74.8c | 76.59 | 74.50 | | |

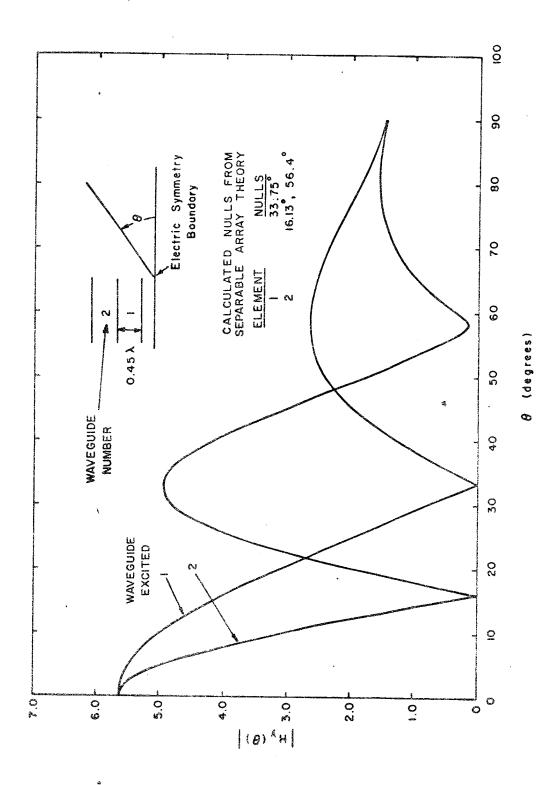
illustrates the convergence of the dominant mode parameters for the case $k_0b_1=1.4137$, $k_0b_2=2.82741$, $k_0b_3=2.82742$. This particular array was examined by Lee (1967). His data is also shown in the table. Note that the convergence is slower than the previous case where the waveguides were smaller. However, excellent results are still obtained. Also note that the data is in closer agreement to Lee for the central waveguides, which is to be expected since Lee used an approximation to an infinite ground plane while in our analysis no ground plane is assumed.

Figure 10.3.2.4 illustrates the far field radiation patterns of this same array. Note that the patterns have nulls near the angles expected from separable array theory. However, note that the null at 58° has noticeably filled due to the differences in aperture illumination because of mutual coupling.

3.3 The Magnetic Wall Case

This section presents results similar to section 3.2 for the magnetic wall case.

Figure 10.3.3.1 illustrates the variation of the TEM reflection coefficient of a trifurcated waveguide with a magnetic symmetry wall (ref. Appendix F) with $k_0b_0=1.27046$, $k_0b_1=0.41417$, and k_0b_2 variable. The data using the open region analysis is shown for comparison. Since the center region does not support a TEM mode only the reflection coefficient of the guide with $k_0b_1=0.41417$ is shown.



Element Patterns for Even Excitation of Lee's $_{\$}Array$ Fig. 10.3.2.4:

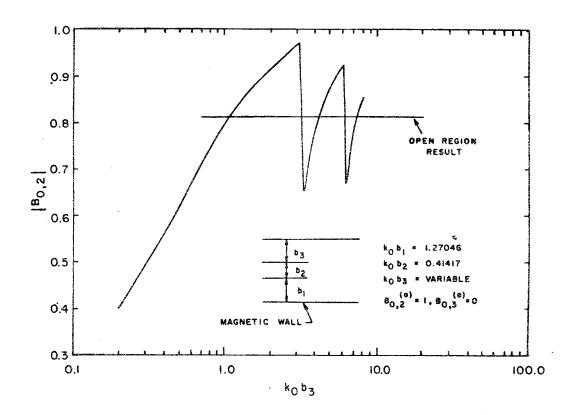


Fig. 10.3.3.1a: Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide with Magnetic Wall as a Function of \mathfrak{b}_3

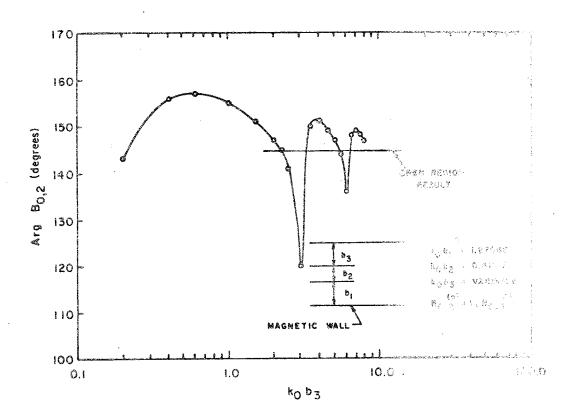


Fig. 10.3.3.1b: Reflection Coefficient of Trifurcated Waveguide with Magnetic Wall as a Function of \mathbf{b}_3

Note that the convergence is slower than the electric wall case for the same geometry (ref. Figure 10.3.2.3). The data also oscillates about the value predicted using open region analysis.

Table 10.3.3.1 illustrates the convergence of this same data as a function of the number of perturbation coefficients ($N_p \equiv N^M, R \equiv N^M, L$) using the open region analysis

Table 10.3.3.1 Convergence of Open Region Results

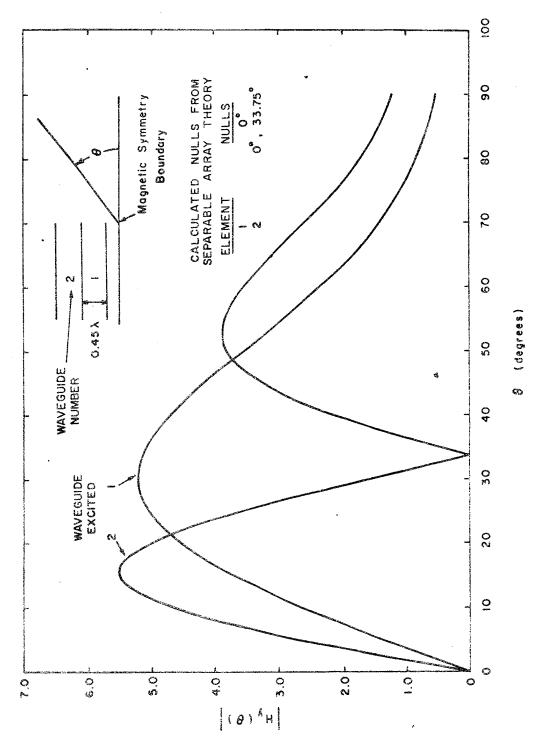
The data illustrates that five place accuracy is acheived with only a few perturbation coefficients.

Table 10.3.3.2 illustrates the convergence of the dominant mode parameters for the case $k_0b_1=1.4137$, $k_0b_2=2.82741$, $k_0b_3=2.82742$. The convergence is quite good. Also, the comparison with Lee's (1967) data is again quite good considering the difference in the presence of a ground plane.

Figure 10.3.3.2 shows the far field radiation pattern of this same array.

3.4 Superposition of the Results

Little data exists for the coupling of parallel plates without a ground plane. However, Dybdal, Rudduck, and Tsai (1966) solved the problem of coupling between two parallel plates using wedge diffraction techniques. A



Element Patterns for Odd Excitation of Lee's Array Fig. 10.3.3.2:

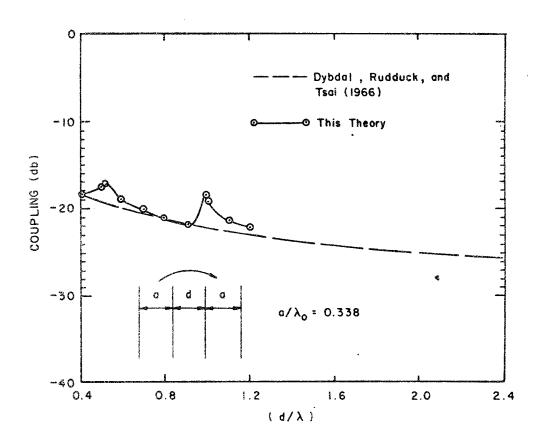


Fig. 10.3.4.1: Mutual Coupling Between Two Parallel Plate Waveguides

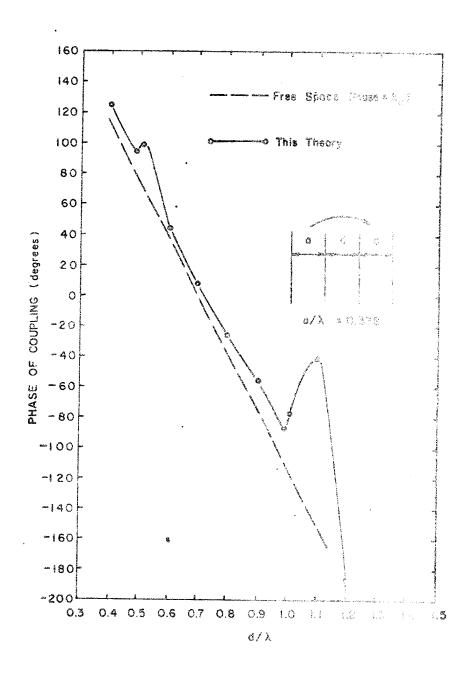


Fig. 10.3.4.2: Phase of Mutual Coupling in seen Two Parallel Plate Waveguider

Table 10.3.3.2 Convergence of Open Region Results

| H | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------------|--|
| H B D | Lee's Data | Ъ | Ľ | 9 | 7 | ∪ ī | N |
| B = with B(o) = 1 | Lee's Data 0.1299 | 0.1304 | 0.1304 | 0,1304 | 0.1304 | 0.1304 | 8 |
| 0 | 76.80 | 75.90 | 75.90 | 75.7° | 75.70 | 75.70 | B 0,2 * |
| | 0.1877 77.50 | 0.1971 | 0.1972 | 0.1972 | 0.1970 | 0.1981 | |
| | 77.50 | 73.10 | 72.90 | 73.00 | 73.40 | 72.10 | W. W |
| | 0,1146 | 0.1144 | 0.1146 | 0.1147 | 0.1141 | 0.1147 | and definition was well and definition as |
| | -107.60 | -110.60 | -111.10 | -111,20 | -110,20 | -111.50 | To the second se |

* Current reflection coefficients

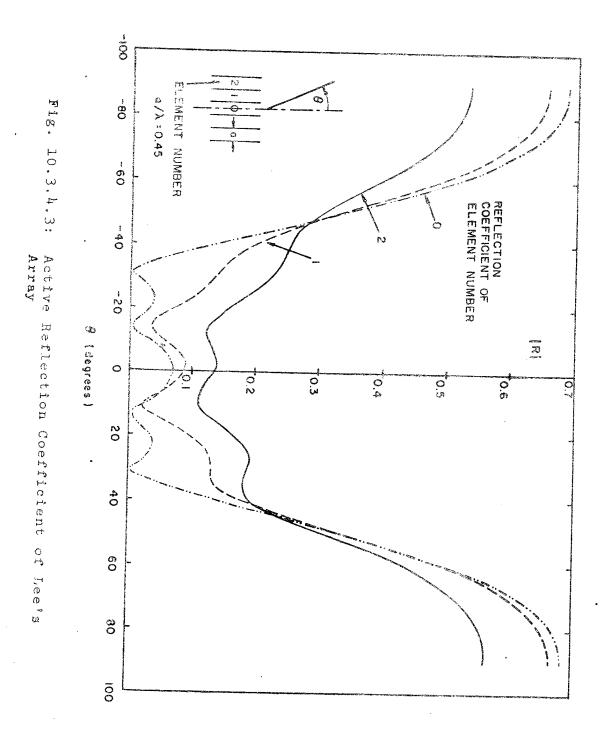
comparison of their data with that calculated using this theory is shown in Figure 10.3.4.1. Note that the modified function theoretic technique predicts resonant effects whenever the separation is a multiple of 0.5 λ . At these separations, the wedge diffraction techniques used by Dybdal, et al. is inadequate because of the modes at cutoff in the inner region with dimension d. Figure 10.3.4.2 shows the phase of the coupling coefficient for this same case. Note that the phase behaves according to the geometrical distance except near the resonances, where the phase progression is slower than free space. the coupling coefficient for this same case. Note that the phase behaves according to the geometrical distance except near the resonances, where the phase progression is slower than free space.

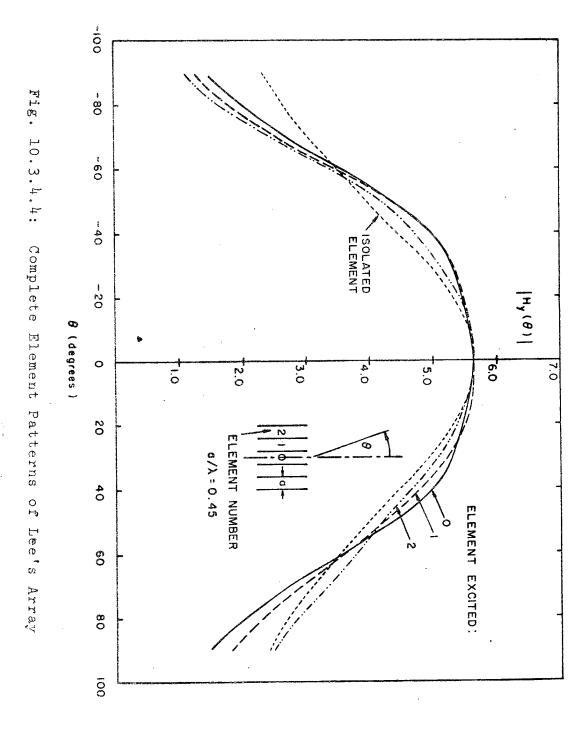
In section 3.2 and 3.3, we presented data for an array examined by Lee (1967). We shall now consider the superposition of that data to obtain the characteristics of the complete five element array. Table 10.3.4.1 shows the complete comparison of all the scattering coefficients with Lee's data. The waveguide's are numbered 1-5 from the edge. Note that good correlation is obtained with Lee's data even though his data is including the effect of a simulated ground plane. However, there is a trend for the coupling coefficients to decay slower without the presence of the ground plane.

Figure 10.3.4.3 illustrates the variation of the ac-

Table 10.3.4.1 Scattering coefficients of Lee's array.

| Waveguide Excited | Reflected Mode in Guide No. | | nis eory | Lee (1967) | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|--------|-------------|------------|---------|--|
| 3 | 1 | 0.0924 | 74.81° | 0.0864 | 77.7° | |
| 3 | 2 | 0.1665 | -107.8° | 0.1625 | -106.8° | |
| 3 | 3 | 0.2195 | 73.67° | 0.2160 | 74.30 | |
| 3 | 14 | 0.1665 | -107.8° | 0.1625 | -106.8° | |
| 3 | . 5 | 0.0924 | 74.81° | 0.0864 | 77.7° | |
| 2 | 1 | 0.1712 | -105.2° | 0.1630 | -102.3° | |
| 2 | 2 | 0.2212 | 74.370 | 0.2165 | 75.6° | |
| 2 | 3 | 0.1713 | -105.3° | 0.1625 | -106.8° | |
| 2 | 4 | 0.0909 | 72.40 | 0.0867 | 73.8° | |
| 2 | 5 | 0.0583 | -93.93° | 0.0501 | -90° | |
| 1 | l | 0.2333 | 78.1° | 0.2184 | 82.5° | |
| 1 | 2 | 0.1712 | -105.2° | 0.1630 | -102.3° | |
| ı | 3 | 0.0924 | 74.9° | 0.0864 | 77.7° | |
| 1 | 14 | 0.0583 | -93.9° | 0.0502 | -90° | |
| 1 | 5 | 0.0411 | 103.5° | 0.0354 | 104.80 | |





tive reflection coefficient of each element as the array is scanned. Note that the reflection coefficient varies from element to element, with the edge element reflection coefficients being asymmetrical.

Figure 10.3.4.4 illustrates the element patterns of each element of this array as well as the isolated element pattern. Note that the edge element patterns are asymetrical. Note that the element patterns have a finite value at $\theta=\pm90^{\circ}$, in contrast to Lee (1967) who predicts zero values. This method of analysis would be particularly powerful in predicting wide angle scan performance of an array in the H plane, where the assumption of an infinite ground plane would produce nulls at $\theta=\pm90^{\circ}$. Note that the element gains are greater for angles away from the center elements. Also note that for these values that the behavior resembles closely that of an isolated element with no ground plane. Also observe that for angles toward the center of the array that the element patterns tend to be more uniform particularly for large angles of observation.

Chapter 11: Remote Sensing of the Earth
Using Parallel Plate Waveguides

1. Introduction

The remote sensing of the earth's sub surface properties is commonly done at low frequencies in order to get the desired penetration. At these frequencies loops and dipoles are commonly used. Ward (1967) discusses the application of elementary source theory to this problem.

For the remote sensing of the earth's properties nearer the surface, moderate frequencies are used. Loops and dipoles are still commonly used; however, the antenna dimensions are no longer small compared to a wavelength. Chang (1971) has analyzed many of these problems using the numerical solution of integral equations.

At higher frequencies, waveguides can often be used instead of the more conventional loops and dipoles. Wave-guides have been commonly employed at higher frequencies; however, they have been confined to measuring the Fresnel reflection coefficients. Greater sensitivity should be possible if the near fields of the antenna are allowed to interact with the earth. This will cause the characteristics of the antennas themselves to change as a function of the environment. From a theoretical viewpoint, such waveguides are more prone to an exacting analysis than dipoles and loops, because waveguides do not have gap corrections and other feed modeling problems. Additionally,

one might obtain increased sensitivity by using two waveguides instead of one. The coupling between the waveguides would provide this increased sensitivity.

The analysis presented in the first part of this dissertation was confined to closed region problems. If a
sample of the earth can be obtained conveniently, then
the analysis of part 1 applies directly. In this case if
one replaces the free space wavelength by the guide wavelength, the analysis applies to rectangular waveguide.
However, generally the determination of the earth's properties must be done remotely.

This chapter considers the problem of a finite array illuminating a homogeneous half space. In essence, this chapter combines the solutions of a waveguide radiating into a half space (Chapter 9) and a finite phased array (Chapter 10). The solution is new and gives physically interesting results for such problems as the coupling of two waveguides above a half space.

2. Formulation of the Equations

2.1 Introduction

As in Chapter 10, we will assume a symmetry boundary parallel to the waveguides. This is not necessary, but is convenient. Hence, we will consider the superposition of the results from two problems: (1) the electric symmetry case and (2) the magnetic symmetry case.

2.2 The Electric Symmetry Case

Figure 11.2.2.1 illustrates the auxiliary problem.

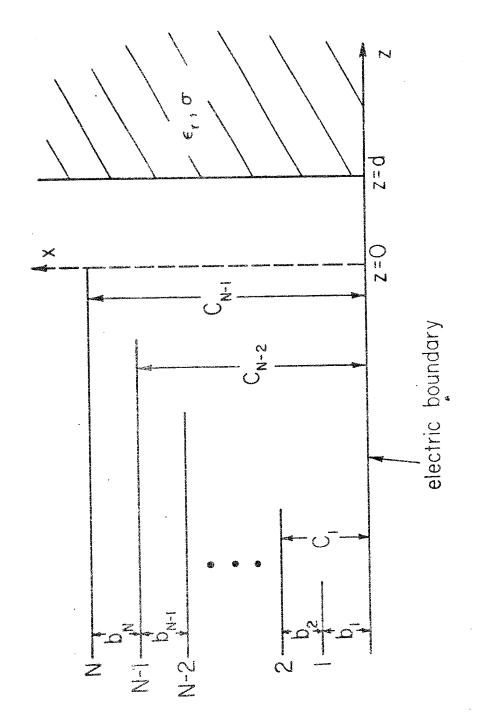
As in the case of the finite phased array the problem can be further separated into two kinds of problems: (1) the interior problem, and (2) the exterior problem. The interior problem is identical to that of Chapter 10 while the exterior problem is a modification of the results of a single waveguide radiating into a homogeneous half space given in Chapter 9.

Clearly then, the N holomorphic functions are identical to (2.2.1)-(2.2.3) of Chapter 10, with the exception of the function associated with the Nth plate on the open region. This function is appropriately modified to account for the higher order modes incident internally on the junction as well as the scattered field from the half space. From Chapter 8, we can find:

$$T_{\mathbf{N}}(\omega) = X(\omega) \left\{ \frac{K_{\mathbf{o}}^{\mathbf{N}}}{\omega - jk_{\mathbf{o}}} + \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{\mathbf{N}, L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n, c_{\mathbf{N}-1}}} - \int_{L_{\mathbf{o}}} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \right\} \right\}$$

$$(2.2.1)$$

where $X(\omega)$ is the homogeneous solution as given in Chapter 8, section 3. Changing t to -t in the integral we have



Auxiliary Problem for Finite Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space Fig. 11.2.2.1:

$$T_{N}(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(\frac{K_{0}^{N}}{\omega - Jk_{0}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}} - \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t)(t+\omega)} \right)$$

$$(2.2.2)$$

From Chapter 9, we can easily derive the integral equation for $g^{(2)}(t)$ by considering the exterior problem. From Chapter 9,

$$T^{-}(\omega) = -\pi\omega e^{\int \lambda c_{N-1}} A(\lambda), \quad \omega \in L_{1}$$
 (2.2.3)

and

$$g^{(2)}(\omega) = \omega \sin \lambda c_{N-1} \cdot A^{O}(\lambda), \omega \epsilon L_{2}$$
 (2.2.4)

But from the boundary condition at the dielectric we can relate $A(\lambda)$ and $A^O(\lambda)$.

$$A^{\circ}(\lambda) = R(\lambda) A(\lambda)$$
 (2.2.5)

where

$$R(\lambda) = \frac{\varepsilon \omega - \Gamma}{\varepsilon \omega + \Gamma} e^{-2\omega d}$$

where

$$\Gamma = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - \varepsilon k_0^2}$$

with the branch of Γ chosen such that $\operatorname{Re}(\Gamma) \geq 0$.

Using (2.2.2)-(2.2.5), we may arrive at the following

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{\sin \lambda c_{N-1}}{\pi} R(\lambda) e^{-j\lambda c_{N-1}} X^{-}(\omega)$$

$$\left(\frac{K_{o}^{N}}{\omega - jk_{o}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}} - \sum_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t)(\omega + t)}\right) \qquad \omega \epsilon L_{1}$$
(2.2.6)

Considering the change of variable

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{\sin \lambda c_{N-1}}{\pi} \frac{R(\lambda)}{(\omega - jk_0)} e^{-j\lambda c_{N-1}} X^{-}(\omega) G(\omega).$$

we transform (2.2.6) to

$$G(\omega) = K_0^N + (\omega - jk_0) \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^N, L}{\omega - \gamma_n, c_{N-1}} + \int_{L_1} \frac{Q(t) G(t) dt}{t + \omega} \right), \quad \omega \in L_1$$
 (2.2.7)

where

$$Q(\omega) = -\frac{\sin \lambda c_{N-1} R(\lambda) e^{-j \lambda c_{N-1} X^{-}(\omega)}}{\pi(\omega - jk_{o}) X(-\omega)}$$

Equation (2.2.7) is the desired integral equation for $G(\omega)$.

We must also modify (2.2.8) of Chapter 10 to reflect . the addition of the integral to $T_{N}\left(\omega\right).$ Hence,

$$T_{N}(-\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}) = (-1)^{n}\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}} e_{M-1}[K_{n}^{N-1,R}]^{-1} g_{n}^{M-1,R}$$

$$= -X(-\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}) \left(\frac{K_{0}^{N}}{\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}} + jk_{0}} + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\gamma_{n,c_{N-1}} + \gamma_{m,c_{N-1}}} + \int_{L_{1}} \frac{Q(t) G(t) dt}{t - \gamma_{n,c_{N-1}}} \right)$$
(2.2.8)

where n = 1,2,3,*** . Equation (2.2.8) is also an nte-gral equation for $G(\omega)$.

All other equations associated with the interior problem remain as given in Chapter 10.

For this particular problem, the TEM coefficients are known (ref. to (2.2.9)-(2.2.11) of Chapter 10). These

equations all remain valid even in the presence of the half space.

In order to solve the integral and albegraic equations efficiently we must consider the asymptotic behavior of the various perturbation coefficients. However, because the presence of the half space does not change or introduce any edge condition, all the asymptotic forms given in Chapter 10 ((2.2.12)-(2.2.13)) are still valid.

All remaining details of the analytical solution are the same as in Chapter 10 when using the new expression for $T_N(\omega)\,.$

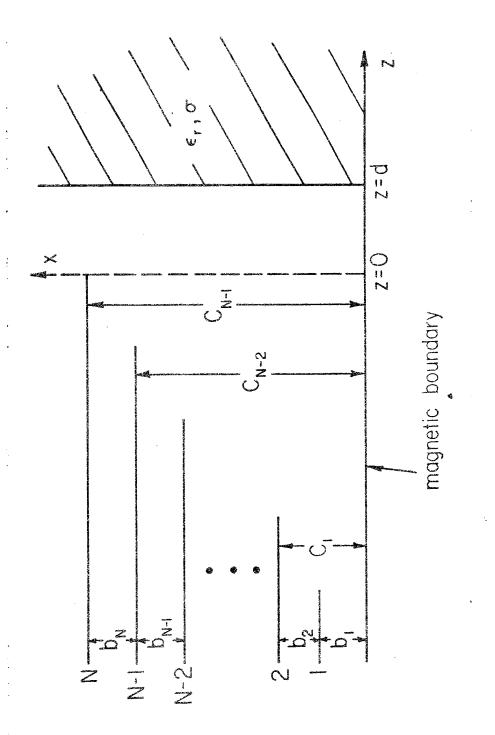
2.3 The Magnetic Symmetry Case

Figure 11.2.3.1 illustrates the auxiliary problem of magnetic symmetry wall case. As in the case of the electric wall, only the exterior problem results need to be changed from the results of Chapter 10. Hence, we need to change only the Nth holomorphic function (i.e. (2.3.3) of Chapter 10). From Chapter 8, (2.3.12) we have that

$$T_{N}(\omega) = X(\omega) \begin{cases} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1,2c_{N-1}}} - \int_{L_{2}} \frac{g_{N,L}(t)}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \end{cases}$$
 (2.3.1)

where $X(\omega)$ is the homogeneous solution for the magnetic wall case. Changing t to -t in the integral we have

$$T_{N}(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1,2c_{N-1}}} - \int_{\mathbb{T}_{2}} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t)(t+\omega)} \right)$$
(2.3.2)



Auxiliary Problem for Finite Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space Fig. 11.2.3.1:

We can arrive at an integral equation for $g^{(2)}(t)$ by recalling from Chapter 8 that

$$T_N^-(\omega) - T_N^+(\omega) = -2\pi j \omega \cos \lambda c_{N-1} A(\lambda), \quad \omega \epsilon L_1$$
 and

$$T_{N}^{-}(\omega) = -e^{\int 2\lambda c}N - 1 T_{N}^{+}(\omega), \qquad \omega \in L_{1}$$
Combining (2.3.3) and (2.3.4) yields, (2.3.4)

$$T_{N}^{-}(\omega) = -j\pi\omega e$$
 $A(\lambda)$, $\omega \in L_{1}$ (2.3.5)

also from (2.3.13) of Chapter 8

$$g^{(2)}(\omega) = -\omega \cos \lambda c_{N-1} A^{\circ}(\lambda), \qquad \omega \in L_2$$

But from the boundary condition at the half space we can relate $A(\lambda)$ and $A^O(\lambda)$

$$A^{O}(\lambda) = R(\lambda) A(\lambda) \qquad (2.3.7)$$

where

$$R(\lambda) = \frac{\varepsilon \omega - \Gamma}{\varepsilon \omega + \Gamma} e^{-2\omega d}$$

and where

$$\Gamma = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - \epsilon k_0^2}$$

with ε being the complex permittivity of the half space. Using (2.3.5)-(2.3.7), we may arrive at the following

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{\int \cos \lambda c_{N-1}}{\pi} R(\lambda) e^{-\int \lambda c_{N-1}} X^{-(\alpha)},$$

$$\left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1}, 2c_{N-1}} - \int_{L_1} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t) (t*\omega)}\right)$$
(2.3.8)

Again a change of variable is made.

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{\int \cos \lambda c_{N-1}}{\pi} R(\lambda) e^{-j\lambda c_{N-1}} X^{-}(\omega) G(\omega)$$

Thus we transform (2.3.8) to

$$G(\omega) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{N,L}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1,2c_{N-1}}} - \int_{L_1} \frac{Q(t) G(t) dt}{t + \omega}$$
(2.3.9)

where

$$Q(\omega) = j \cos \lambda c_{N-1} R(\lambda) e^{-j\lambda c_{N-1}} \frac{X^{-}(\omega)}{\pi X(-\omega)}$$

Equation (2.3.9) is the desired integral equation for $G(\omega)$. All other equations given in section 2.3 of Chapter 10 are valid.

3. Numerical Results

3.1 Introduction

The equations derived in sections 2.2 and 2.3 are implemented in the programs OPEN1 and OPEN2 given in Appendix G. These programs also solve the multiplate problem without the half space. The numerical solution of the integral equations was accomplished using Gaussian quadrature similar to that described in Chapter 9.

3.2 The Electric Wall Case

This section presents the results of two studies. The first study is an examination of how the closed region

results of Chapters 3 and 4 converge to the open region results. The second study considers the convergence of the open region results as a function of the number of perturbation coefficients and truncation of the integral equation.

The evolution of closed region problems into open region problems is interesting due to two reasons: (1) It is interesting to examine a problem which can be solved both in the open and closed region cases to see which problem is "easier" to solve, and (2) It provides a check on the open region solution against previous closed region results.

Figures 11.3.2.1 (a)-(c) illustrate the variation of the dominant mode parameters for a dielectrically loaded trifurcated waveguide with $k_ob_2=1.27046$, $k_ob_1=0.41417$, and with k_ob_o variable. Also, $\epsilon_r=10$, $\sigma/k_o=0.01$, and $k_od=1.256$. The open region data is shown for comparison. As in Chapter 10, the reflection coefficient for the smallest waveguide ($k_ob_1=0.41417$) converges fastest to the open region result. However, the reflection coefficient of the waveguide with $k_ob_2=1.27046$ and the coupling coefficient between the two guides both converge much slower to the open region solution. However, all of the data computed is observed to oscillate about the values computed using the open region analysis. It should be noted that the convergence to the open region solution is about the same as that shown in Chapter 10 where the

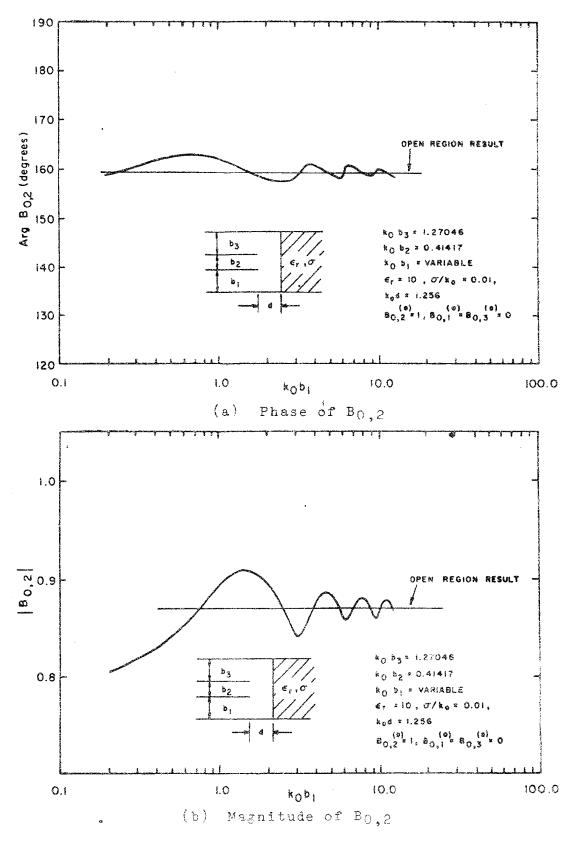
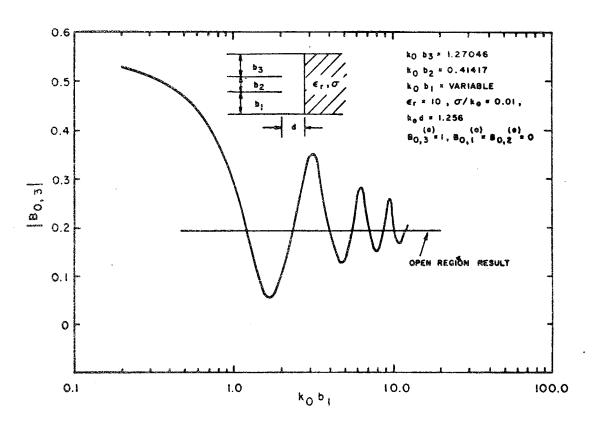


Fig. 11.3.2.1: Scattering Parameters of Dielectrically Loaded Waveguide as a Function of b1



(c) Magnitude of Bo,3

Fig. 11.3.2.1: Scattering Parameters of Dielectrically Loaded Waveguide as a Function of bl

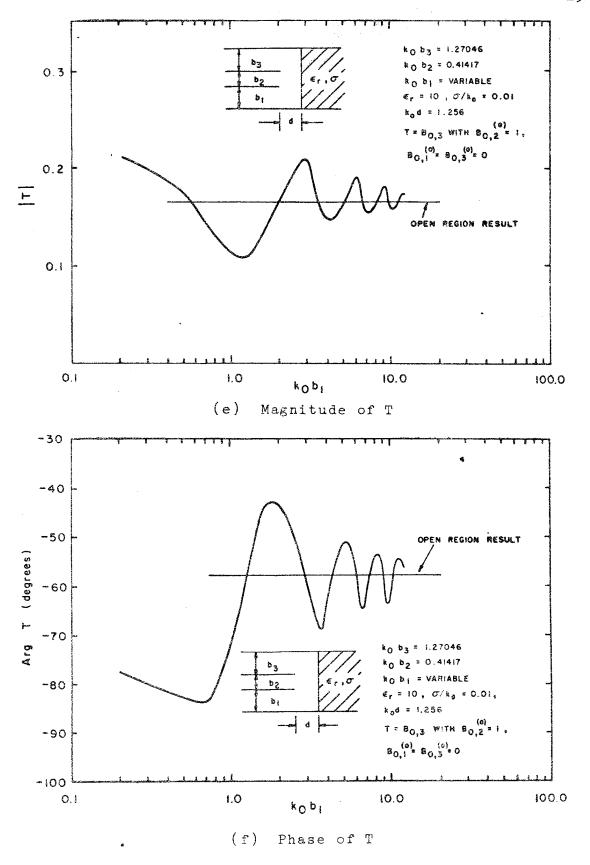


Fig. 11.3.2.1: Scattering Parameters of Dielectrically Loaded Waveguide as a Function of b₁

dielectric half space is not present. The dielectric is quite lossy and $0.2\lambda_0$ away from the horn aperture. Hence in order for the edge wall distance to become secondary, the distance to the half space must be an even smaller fraction of a wavelength than $0.2\lambda_0$.

Table 11.3.2.1 illustrates the convergence of some dominant mode parameters as a function of the number of intervals, N, along L_1 and the number of points, M_n , within the nth interval for the case $\epsilon_r = 10$, $\sigma/k_0 = 0.01$, $k_0 = 1.256$, $k_0 = 1.27046$, $k_0 = 0.41417$, and with $N^2, L_1 = N^{1,R} = 5$.

Essentially five place accuracy is achieved with as few as three matching intervals and 32 match points.

Table 11.3.2.2 illustrates the convergence of the same geometry considered in Table 11.2.3.1 except as a function of the number of perturbation coefficients, $N_p = N^{1,R} = N^{2,L} \text{ and with } N = 2, M_1 = 16, M_2 = 8.$

Table 11.3.2.2 Convergence of Open Region Solution

| N P | <u>B</u> <u>c</u> | * 0 <u>1</u> | Bc | * 2 | T* | | |
|--------|-------------------|-----------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--|
| 5 | 0.19399 | 177.68° | 0.87189 | 159.46° | 0.50981 | -57.44° | |
| 7 | 0.19400 | 177.68° | 0.87188 | 159.46° | 0.50896 | -57.43° | |
| 9 | 0.19402 | 177.68° | 0.87186 | 159.46° | 0.50993 | -57.43° | |

*Same as Table 11.3.2.1

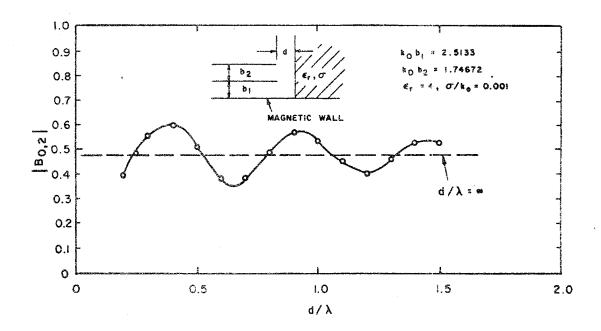
This clearly illustrates that the convergence of the solution is quite good.

Table 11.3.2.1 Convergence of Open Region Solution

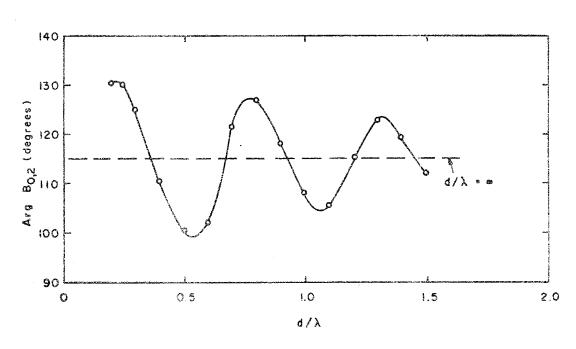
| si t 1. | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-----------------------|
| 1, 0 H | w | ω | V1 | 4 | ω | N | 🗷 |
| _B O ≤ ₹ | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 | L Z |
| द द '* | 16 | 16 | ထ | co | œ | 8 | N _M |
| B(0) B(0) B(0) Co,2 | 16 | σ | 8 | 8 | œ | i | $\omega^{\mathbb{X}}$ |
| , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , | Ę | 9 | œ | œ | | * | 4 _M |
| B(0) B(0) B(0) 1, | CON CARD | liber ope | œ | 100 Kr0 | 2 | ‡ • | \M_{2} |
| B(0). | 0.19413 | 0.19412 | 0.19385 | 0.19385 | 0.19385 | 0.19399 | В |
| | 177.670 | 177.660 | 177.660 | 177.66° | 177.66° | 177.68° | - |
| | 0.87148 | 0.87147 | 0.87149 | 0.87149 | 0.87150 | 0.87189 | |
| | 159.39° | 159.39° | 159.39° | 159,39° | 159.39° | 159.46° | N # |
| | 0.51002 | 0.51002 | 0.50993 | 0.50993 | 0.50993 | 0.50981 | **** |
| | -57.52° | -57.520 | -57.51° | ~57.51° | -57.51° | -57.440 | *** |

3.3 The Magnetic Wall Case

This section presents results similar to section 3.2, with one exception. No closed region data is presented since the problem of an N-furcated waveguide with dielectric loading and a magnetic symmetry wall was not implemented on the computer. However, an alternate check of the solution is available. Figure 11.3.3.1 illustrates the variation of the reflection coefficient of a truncated parallel plate waveguide parallel to a magnetic symmetry wall as a function of the distance from the waveguide aperture to a conducting half space. The reflection coefficient for the case of no diffectric is shown for comparison. One notes that the reflection coefficient for the case with the dielectric oscillates about the no dielectric case, symmetrically and with progressively smaller amplitude.



(a) Magnitude of Reflection Coefficient



(b) Phase of Reflection Coefficient

Fig. 11.3.3.1: Variation of the Reflection Coefficient of the Magnetic Wall Case as a Function of Distance

Table 11.3.3.1 Convergence of Open Region Solution

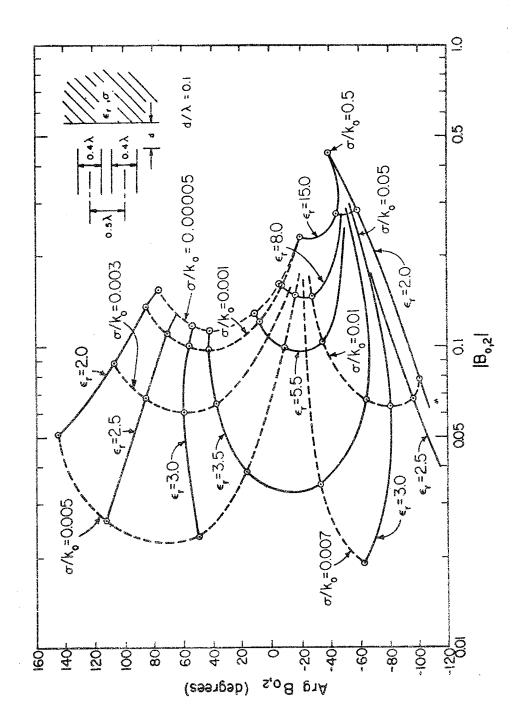
| \overline{N}^{D} | N | $\frac{M}{1}$ | <u>M</u> 2 | <u>M</u> 3 | <u>M</u> 4 | Во | <u>,2</u> |
|--------------------|---|---------------|------------|------------|------------|---------|-----------|
| 7 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 14 | | 0.74420 | 147.98° |
| 7 | 3 | 6 | 6 | 6 | | 0.75396 | 147.91° |
| 7 | 3 | 8 | 8 | 8 | | 0.75322 | 147.80° |
| , 7 | 3 | 10 | 10 | 10 | *** | 0.75304 | 147.81° |
| 7 | 3 | 12 | 12 | 12 | - | 0.74313 | 147.810 |
| 7 | 4 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 0.75313 | 147.80° |
| 7 | 3 | 16 | 8 | 16 | | 0.75317 | 147.81° |
| 5 | 3 | 16 | 8 | 16 | | 0.75316 | 147.80° |
| 9 | 3 | 16 | 8 | 16 | - | 0.75317 | 147.80° |

Again, excellent convergence is observed, both with respect to approximation of the continuous as well as discrete parts of the problem.

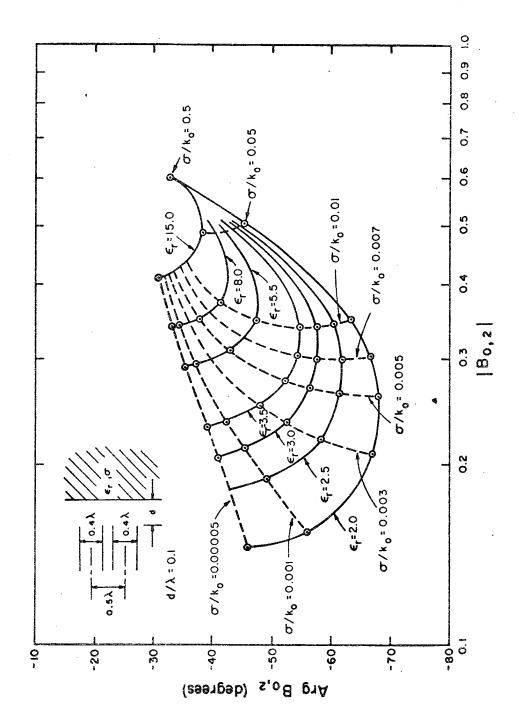
3.4 Superposition of the Results

The title of this chapter suggests the use of waveguides to remotely sense the parameters of the earth. In
this case, we are suggesting a locally plane approximation
as well as a homogeneous half space.

Figure 11.3.4.1 illustrates reflection coefficient of one of two 0.4 $\lambda_{\rm O}$ waveguides spaced 0.5 $\lambda_{\rm O}$ apart with respect to their centers, at a distance of 0.1 $\lambda_{\rm O}$ away from a half space. The variation of the permittivity and conductivity cause the reflection coefficient to change quite noticeably. In fact, the variation is quite similar to that of a single 0.4 $\lambda_{\rm O}$ waveguide given in Chapter 9, in figure 9.4.3, as indeed it should be. Figure 11.3.4.2 illustrates this same data matched to the impedance of a single waveguide looking into free space. Again, this is quite similar to the data of Chapter 9, and resembles



of a Two Element Parallel Plate Waveguide Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric Parameters Reflection Coefficient of One Element 11.3.4.1: 15. 10.



Waveguide Array Radiating into a Dielectric Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric of a Two Element Parallel Plate Matched Reflection Coefficient of One Fig. 11.3.4.2:

Parameters

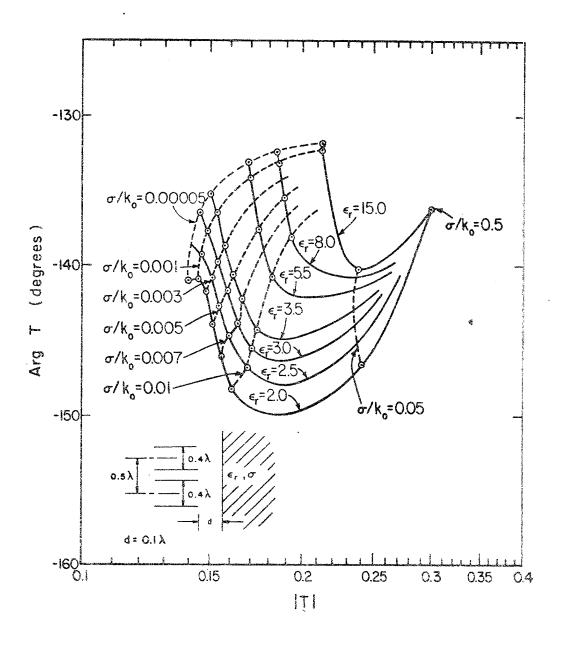


Fig. 11.3.4.3: Coupling Between Two Parallel Plate
Waveguides Radiating into a Dielectric
Half Space as a Function of the Dielectric
Parameters

quite closely the normally incident Fresnel reflection coefficient. Figure 11.3.4.3 illustrates the coupling coefficient between the two waveguides as a function of variation of the half space parameters. One should observe that the phase of the coupling coefficient varies over about 20° while the magnitude varies between about 0.15 to 0.3. This is to be compared with about 40° of change in the phase of the matched reflection coefficient and an amplitude of the matched reflection coefficient varying from about 0.15 to 0.6.

Hence, in this particular case it appears as if the pair of antennas is of little further help in solving the inverse problem of determining ϵ_r and σ , as compared with a single antenna. However, this is not to say that the coupling coefficient may not be useful in this determination. Additionally, the coupling coefficient might prove to be more sensitive to variation for such problems as layered earth models or buried dielectric anomalies.

| | | | • |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | • | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| • | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| • | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | • | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | • | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Chapter 12: Other Open Region Problems

1. Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to illustrate the ease of application of the modified function theoretic technique to some additional open region problems. In particular the following problems are solved using the modified function theoretic technique: (1) a flanged waveguide radiating into a half space, (2) scattering by a thick semi-infinite plane, and (3) radiation from a slot in a waveguide.

A flanged waveguide radiating into a grounded dielectric sheath has been solved by Wu (1969) using moment
methods. Also Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969, 1971) discuss
the solution of the problem of a flanged waveguide radiating
into a dielectric slab using the modified function theoretic
technique. In their 1971 paper they make the erroneous
statement that the associated homogeneous Hilbert problem
cannot be solved in closed form. Indeed the solution of
this problem is quite straight forward using the techniques
in this dissertation.

The scattering by a thick semi-infinite plane has been solved by Lee and Mittra (1968) using the generalized scattering matrix technique. The solution given in this chapter serves to illustrate the use of the modified function theoretic technique when the incident field is a plane wave.

Another problem of interest is the radiation from a slot in a waveguide wall. This problem is a simple extension of the problem of a waveguide radiating into a half space given in Chapter 9.

2. Flanged Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space The geometry of this problem and its auxiliary problem are shown in Figure 12.2.1. From Chapter 8 we can clearly write the holomorphic function $T(\omega)$ as

$$T(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(\frac{K_0}{\omega - jk_0} + \int_{L_1} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t-\omega)} - \int_{L_2} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \right)$$
 (2.2)

where

$$X(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)(\omega - jk_{0})\Pi(\omega,\gamma_{b}) exp\left\{\frac{b\sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{0}^{2}}}{\pi} \left\{ ln\left(\frac{\omega - \sqrt{\omega^{2} + k_{0}^{2}}}{k_{0}}\right) + \frac{j\pi}{2} \right\} \right\}$$

where

$$H_{1}(\omega) = \exp\left\{\frac{\omega b}{\pi} \left(1-C_{\ell}-\ln\left(\frac{k_{o}b}{2\pi}\right)\right) - \frac{\omega b}{2}\right\}$$

From Chapter 8 we have that

$$g^{(1)}(\omega) = -\omega \sin \lambda b e^{j\lambda b} C^{o}(\lambda), \omega \epsilon L_1$$
 (2.3a)

$$g^{(2)}(\omega) = \omega \sin \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda), \qquad \omega \in L_2$$
 (2.3b)

Also we have

$$T^{-}(\omega)-T^{+}(\omega) = -2\pi j \omega \sin \lambda b A(\lambda), \omega \epsilon L_{1} \qquad (2.4)$$

an d

$$T^{+}(-\omega)+T^{-}(-\omega) = 2\pi\omega[\cos \lambda b A^{\circ}(\lambda) - C(\lambda)], \omega \in L_{1}$$
 (2.5)

However, the spectra are related at z=d and at z=- δ by the following

$$C^{\circ}(\lambda) = R_{C}(\lambda) C(\lambda)$$
 (2.6)

where

$$R_{C}(\lambda) = \frac{\varepsilon' \omega - \Gamma'}{\varepsilon' \omega + \Gamma'} e^{-2\omega\delta}$$

and

$$A^{\circ}(\lambda) = R_{A}(\lambda) A(\lambda)$$
 (2.7)

where

$$R_{A}(\lambda) = \frac{\varepsilon \omega - \Gamma}{\varepsilon \omega + \Gamma} e^{-2\omega d}$$

Using the property of $X(\omega)$ that

$$X^{-}(\omega) = X^{+}(\omega)e^{j2\lambda b}, \omega \epsilon L_{1}$$

we can immediately write (2.4) as

$$\begin{array}{l} x^-(\omega) 2 \mathrm{j} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{j} \lambda \mathrm{b}} & \sin \lambda \mathrm{b} \left(\frac{\mathrm{K}_0}{\omega - \mathrm{j} \mathrm{k}_0} + \mathrm{PV} \int_{\mathrm{L}_1} \frac{\mathrm{g}^{(1)}(\mathrm{t}) \, \mathrm{d} \mathrm{t}}{\mathrm{x}^-(\mathrm{t})(\mathrm{t} - \omega)} - \int_{\mathrm{L}_2} \frac{\mathrm{g}^{(2)}(\mathrm{t}) \, \mathrm{d} \mathrm{t}}{\mathrm{x}(\mathrm{t})(\mathrm{t} - \omega)} \right) \\ & + 2 \pi \mathrm{j} \, \mathrm{g}^{(1)}(\omega) \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{j} \lambda \mathrm{b}} \, \cos \lambda \mathrm{b} = -2 \pi \mathrm{j} \, \omega \, \sin \lambda \mathrm{b} \, \mathrm{A}(\lambda), \, \omega \in \mathrm{L}_1 \end{array}$$

Then using (2.7) and (2.3b) we arrive at the following integral equation

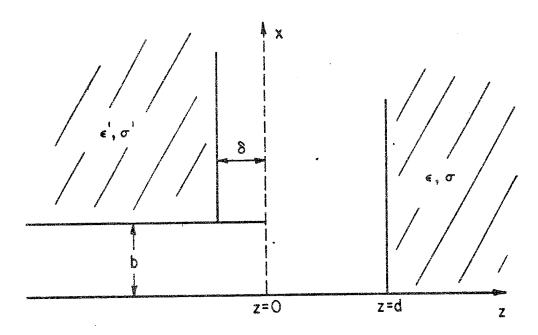
$$X^{-}(\omega)e^{-j\lambda b}\sin \lambda b \left(\frac{K_{o}}{\omega - jk_{o}} + PV \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(1)}(t) dt}{X^{-}(t)(t-\omega)} - \int_{L_{2}} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)}\right) + \pi g^{(1)}(\omega)e^{-j\lambda b}\cos \lambda b = \pi R_{A}^{-1}(\lambda) g^{(2)}(\omega), \omega \epsilon L_{1}$$
 (2.8)

(2.8) is just the extension of equation (2.5) of Chapter 9.

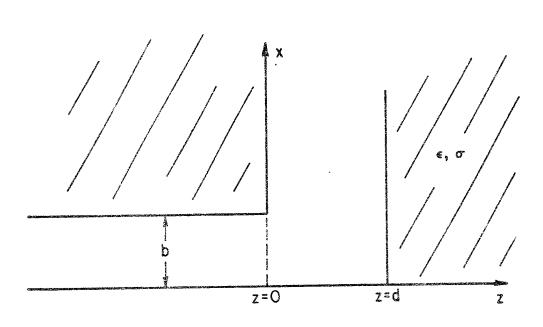
Similarly for $\omega \epsilon L_2$ we know that

$$X^{-}(\omega) = X^{+}(\omega) = X(\omega)$$

hence we can write (2.5) explicitly as



(a) The Auxiliary Problem



(b) The Final Problem

Fig. 12.2.1: Flanged Waveguide Radiating into a Half Space

where

$$Q^{(1)}(\omega) = \frac{-\sin \lambda b R_C(\lambda) e^{j\lambda b} X(-\omega)}{\pi(\omega + jk_0) X^{-}(\omega)}, \quad \omega \in L_1$$

an d

$$Q^{(2)}(\omega) = \frac{\sin \lambda b R_{A}(\lambda)e^{-j\lambda b} X^{-(-\omega)}}{\pi(\omega+jk_{O})}, \omega \epsilon L_{2}$$

Similarly, using (2.10) and (2.11), (2.9) becomes

$$\left(\frac{1}{\omega - jk_{o}} + \int_{L_{1}} \frac{\lambda^{(1)}(t)G^{(1)}(t)dt}{t - \omega} + PV \int_{L_{2}} \frac{\lambda^{(2)}(t)G^{(2)}(-t)dt}{t - \omega}\right) \\
= \pi \cot \lambda b \lambda^{(2)}(\omega)G^{(2)}(-\omega) + \frac{G^{(1)}(-\omega)}{\omega - jk_{o}}, \quad \omega \in L_{2}$$
(2.13)

Now from Chapters 8 and 9 we have already found that

$$Q^{(2)}(-\omega) = 0\left\{\frac{e^{-2\omega d}}{\omega}\right\} |\omega| \rightarrow \infty, \quad \omega \in L_1$$

and

$$G^{(2)}(\omega) = O(1), \quad |\omega| \rightarrow \infty, \quad \omega \in L_2$$

and we know that integrals involving $G^{(2)}(\omega)$ can be truncated because of the exponential decay of $\lambda^{(2)}(\omega)$.

Also we have previously found that

$$Q^{(1)}(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1}), |\omega| \rightarrow \infty, \omega \epsilon L_1$$

an d

$$G^{(1)}(\omega) = O(\omega^{-\Delta}), |\omega| \rightarrow \infty, \omega \epsilon L_2$$

where

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{\pi} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{\varepsilon' - 1}{2(\varepsilon' + 1)} \right)$$

$$X(\omega) \left(\frac{K_0}{\omega - jk_0} + \int_{L_1} \frac{g^{(1)}(t)}{X^-(t)(-\omega)} - PV \int_{L_2} \frac{g^{(2)}(t)}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \right)$$

$$= \frac{-\pi}{\sin \lambda b} \left(\cos \lambda b \ g^{(2)}(\omega) - e^{-j\lambda b} \ R_C^{-1}(\lambda) g^{(1)}(-\omega) \right), \ \omega \in L_2$$

(2.9) is just the extension of equation (3.5) of Chapter 8.

Equations (2.8) and (2.9) are simultaneous integral equations for the unknown functions $g^{(1)}(\omega)$ and $g^{(2)}(\omega)$. Note that in each equation we have a Cauchy principle value integral in contrast to the previous cases where the integrals existed in the usual Riemann sense. We will not give any numerical results here but we are in a position to discuss the asymptotic behavior of the unknowns. However, before doing this it is convenient to make a transformation of variables similar to those used for the flanged guide and the radiation into a half space. Thus consider

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = \frac{K_0 \sin \lambda b R_A(\lambda)}{\pi(\omega - jk_0)} e^{-j\lambda b} x^{-(\omega)}G^{(2)}(\omega), \omega \epsilon L_1$$
(2.10)

an d

$$\mathbf{g}^{(1)}(\omega) = \frac{-K_{0} \sin \lambda b}{\pi(\omega + jk_{0})} e^{j\lambda b} R_{C}(\lambda) X(-\omega) G^{(1)}(\omega), \omega \epsilon L_{1}$$
(2.11)

Using (2.10) and (2.11), (2.8) becomes

$$\left\{ \frac{1}{\omega - jk_{o}} + PV \right\} \frac{Q^{(1)}(t)G^{(1)}(t) dt}{t - \omega} + \int_{L_{2}} \frac{Q^{(2)}(t)G^{(2)}(-t) dt}{t - \omega} \right\} + \pi \cot \lambda b Q^{(1)}(\omega) G^{(1)}(\omega) = \frac{G^{(2)}(\omega)}{\omega - jk_{o}}, \quad \omega \in L_{1}$$

value integrals. As noted by Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969, 1971) one possible alternative is to change the paths of integration. However, when doing this the new path of integration is rather arbitrary and may introduce more numerical difficulty than the original path.

3. Scattering by a Thick Semi-Infinite Plane
Figure 12.3.1 illustrates the geometry of the thick
semi-infinite plane as well as the auxiliary problem. For
simplicity we are only solving the electric boundary case.
In general, incidence at an arbitrary angle requires that
the magnetic symmetry problem be solved in addition to
the electric case. However, the method is clearly illustrated from just the electric solution.

From Chapter 8 we see that the solution of the problem may be found from the holomorphic function

$$T(\omega) = X(\omega) \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{g_n}{\omega - \gamma_{nb}} - \int_{L_2} \frac{g(2)(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)} \right)$$
 (3.1)

where $X(\omega)$ is the homogeneous solution. Since the incident field is a plane wave we have

$$A^{\circ}(\omega) = A_{\circ}\delta(\omega - jk_{\circ}\cos\theta_{\circ}), \omega \epsilon L_{1}$$

where $\delta(.)$ is the Dirac delta function and hence

$$g^{(2)}(-\omega) = -\omega \sin \lambda b A_o \delta(\omega - jk_o \cos \theta_o)$$
, $\omega \in L_1$

For the edge condition to be explicitly satisfied at z = 0, x = b we can write

$$Q^{(1)}(\omega)G^{(1)}(\omega) = \overline{G} \omega^{-1-\Delta}, \quad \omega > \omega \circ \omega \circ \omega \in L_{\gamma}$$
 (2.14)

In order to insure that the edge condition is explicitly satisfied we must insure that

$$\sin \lambda b A(\lambda) = O(\lambda^{-3/2-\Delta}), |\lambda| \rightarrow \infty$$

Then from (2.40 or equivalently (2.12) we see that the following term must vanish in order that $G^{(2)}(\omega) = O(\omega^{-\Delta})$.

$$1 + \int_{L_1} Q^{(1)}(t)G^{(1)}(t) dt + \int_{L_1} Q^{(2)}(-t)G^{(2)}(t) dt = 0$$

or

$$1 + \int_{L_{1}}^{(\omega_{0})} Q^{(1)}(t)G^{(1)}(t) dt + \overline{G} \frac{\omega_{0}^{-\Delta}}{\Delta}$$

$$+ \int_{L_{1}}^{Q^{(2)}} Q^{(2)}(-t)G^{(2)}(t) dt = 0$$
(2.15)

Equation (2.15) is merely the extension of equation (3.13) of Chapter 8.

Before concluding this section, it is in order to briefly discuss the method of numerical solution that one might used in solving (2.12) and (2.13). Note that in contrast to the equations obtained in the solution of flanged waveguide and the solution of a waveguide radiating into a homogeneous half space that equations (2.12) and (2.13) require the evaluation of Cauchy principle value integrals. Hence any numerical approximation technique used for the solution of these equations must account for the principle

Thus

$$\int_{L_{2}} \frac{g^{(2)}(t) dt}{X(t)(t-\omega)} = \int_{L_{1}} \frac{g^{(2)}(-t) dt}{X(-t)(t+\omega)} \\
= \frac{-jk_{0} \cos \theta_{0} A_{0} \sin(k_{0}b \sin \theta_{0})}{X(-jk_{0} \cos \theta_{0})(\omega+jk_{0} \cos \theta_{0})} (3.2)$$

Note that in the limiting case as $\theta_o \to 0^\circ$, that the electric solution furnishes the complete solution to the problem.

In order to find an equation for \textbf{g}_n we use the knowledge that at z = $-\delta$ that

$$B_{m}^{(o)} = B_{m} R_{m} \tag{3.3}$$

where

$$R_{m} = \frac{\varepsilon \gamma_{mb} - \Gamma_{mb}}{\varepsilon \gamma_{mb} + \Gamma_{mb}} e^{-2\delta \Gamma_{mb}}$$

where

$$\Gamma_{\rm mb} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\rm m}\pi\right)^2 - \varepsilon k_0^2}$$

Then using (v) of Chapter 8, section 2 we have

$$(-1)^{m+1}T(-\gamma_{mb}) = -\gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_{m} B_{m}$$

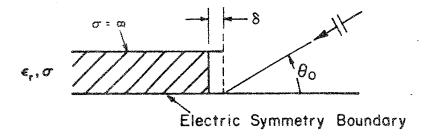
$$= -\gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_{m} R_{m}^{-1} B_{m}^{(o)}$$

$$(3.4)$$

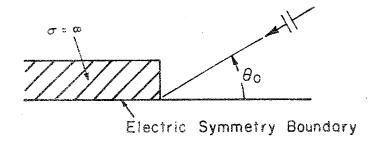
but from (i) of Chapter 8, section 2, we have

$$(-1)^{m+1}T(\gamma_{mb}) = \gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_{m} B_{m}^{(o)}$$

$$= \begin{cases} (-1) \frac{X^{(m)}(\gamma_{mb})}{\gamma_{mb}} g_{m} & m > 0 \\ -X^{(o)}(jk_{o}) g_{o} & m = 0 \end{cases}$$
(3.5)



(a) Auxiliary Problem



(b) Half Plane Geometry

Fig. 12.3.1: The Thick Half Plane

One should note that as $\theta_0 \to 0$ that the term involving A_0 becomes singular and it would appear that we do not have a proper solution. However, for the case of $\theta_0 = 0$, the waveguide walls are orthogonal to the incident electric field and the equations given in Chapter 8 are incomplete. In this case there will be an additional term

$$-jk_{o}bA_{o}e^{jk_{o}z_{o}}\delta_{mo}$$

on the left hand side of (2.2.6) of Chapter 8 and an additional term will be present in (2.2.10) of Chapter 8.

Thus we have that

$$(-1)^{m}T(-\gamma_{mb}) = \gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_{m} B_{m} e^{\gamma_{mb}z_{0}} - jk_{0}b A_{0} e^{jk_{0}z_{0}} \delta_{mo}$$
(3.10)
In this case (3.7) must be modified to be

$$(-1)^{m}X(-\gamma_{mb})\begin{pmatrix} -\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}}{\gamma_{mb}+\gamma_{nb}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_{m} R_{m}^{-1} B_{m}^{(o)} - jk_{o}b A_{o} \delta_{mo}$$
(3.11)

4. Radiation from a Slot in a Waveguide Wall
This section serves as a forum for presenting some
results using the theory of Chapter 9. In particular,
if one considers the case of a waveguide radiating into a
half space, a slot in the waveguide wall can be simulated
by superposition of the case where the half space is
allowed to become either a perfect electric or magnetic
conductor.

For TEM excitation this type of slot is known as a series slot, because the equivalent circuit is just a series admittance.

where $X^{(m)}(\gamma_{mb})$ indicates that the mth zero at γ_{mb} is to be omitted. Hence we can write in general

$$g_{m} = \lambda_{m} B_{m}^{(o)} \tag{3.6}$$

where λ_{m} is defined by (3.5). Using (3.6) in (3.4) we have

$$(-1)^{m+1} X(-\chi_{mb}) \left(-\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{g_n}{\gamma_{mb} + \gamma_{nb}} + \frac{j_{\infty} \cos \theta_0 A_0 \sin (k_0 b \sin \theta_0)}{X(-j_{\infty} \cos \theta_0) (j_{\infty} \cos \theta_0 - \gamma_{mb})} \right) = (3.7)$$

$$- \gamma_{mb} b \epsilon_m R_m^{-1} \lambda_m^{-1} g_m , m = 0, 1, 2, ...$$

(3.7) is an infinite matrix equation for g_m .

In order to truncate (3.7) efficiently let us investigate the asymptotic behavior of g_m . We may follow a procedure similar to that used for the E-plane step in Chapter 2 and find that

$$g_n = O(n^{-1-\Delta})$$

where

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{\pi} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{(\varepsilon - 1)}{2(\varepsilon + 1)} \right)$$

Also if $g_m = \overline{g} m^{-1-\Delta}$ for m > N, then we can easily show that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N} g_n + \overline{g} \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} n^{-1-\Delta} + \frac{jk_0 \cos \theta_0 A_0 \sin (k_0 b \sin \theta_0)}{X(-jk_0 \cos \theta_0)} = 0$$

$$(3.8)$$

From Chapter 10 we know that the far field for z > 0 is determined by

$$T(jk_{o} \cos \theta)e^{jk_{o}b \sin \theta}$$
 (3.9)

and thus upon solving for \mathbf{g}_{n} and $\overline{\mathbf{g}}$ we can easily find the far field scattering pattern.

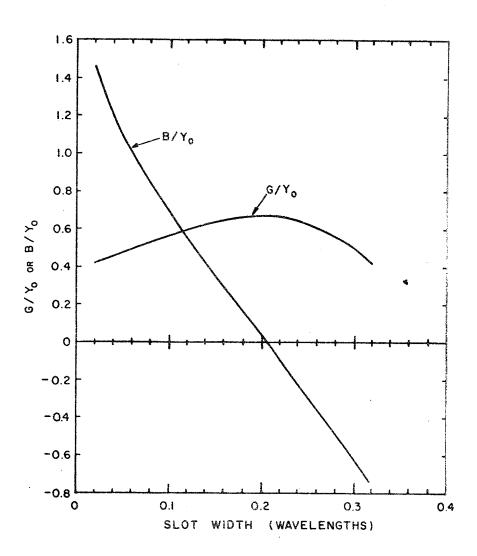


Fig. 12.4.1: Series Slot Admittance

Figure 12.4.1 shows the series conductance and susceptance as a function of slot width for the case of $(2b/\lambda) = 0.278$. For this particular case the slot is resonant at a slot width of about 0.2 wavelengths.

Chapter 13: Conclusions (Part II)

This part of the dissertation has presented the MRCT and MFTT solution of a new class of open region problems. The approach has been to solve a canonical problem of a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide with known incident fields. The solution of composite problems is readily found from the associated auxiliary problem. Many of the problems solved in this part of the dissertation were combined open and closed region problems for which the results of part I of this dissertation were also applicable. An example is the finite phased array. The auxiliary problem may be recognized to be composed of an N-furcated waveguide and a semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide.

The particular class of problems are essentially the open region analogues of the N-furcated waveguide and its modifications as given in part I of this dissertation.

The convergence of the solutions is rapid and only requires a small number of perturbation coefficients or a limited representation of a continuous perturbation spectrum.

Several physically interesting problems were solved.

Among these were the problem of radiation of a waveguide into a homogeneous half space. This solution indicates that remote sensing of the earth is quite feasible even when the earth is in the near field of the waveguide aperture. Even in the near field, one is able to relate the

reflection coefficient to the normally incident Fresnel reflection coefficient. The primary difference is that the argand diagram is rotated. This same problem was also solved for the case of two waveguides. For the case of a homogeneous earth, no particular advantage of measuring the coupling coefficient in addition to the reflection coefficient was observed. However, this may not hold true for such problems as the remote sensing of dielectric anomalies or in layered media.

Another problem of physical interest, was the problem of a finite phased array without a ground plane. The analysis to date has assumed an infinite ground plane (or some approximation to it) in order to simplify the analysis. This is a good approximation if one is only interested in the array patterns near broadside. However, for wide angle scanning arrays the correlation is increasingly bad because of ground plane effects. It should also be noted that this analysis can be easily extended to the case of a finite ground plane.

Solutions are also indicated for more complicated problems such as a flanged waveguide radiating into a layered media.

However, efficient techniques for this factorization may be found in Weinstein (1969) as well as Mittra and Lee (1971). This canonical problem admits the possibility of solving such problems as a flanged circular waveguide radiating into a homogeneous half space. Also the problem of a flanged (or un-flanged) coaxial waveguide radiating into free space or a layered half space can be solved using the techniques.

Other canonical problems which offer interesting possibilities are the open and closed region problems of a grounded dielectric slab with a semi-infinite metallic plate mounted on the dielectric. This problem cannot be solved in closed form, but Bates and Mittra (1968) have given efficient numerical schemes for the fattorization. This canonical problem allows one to solve two interesting problems. The first is the diffraction and scattering of waves from a dielectric step in a waveguide. This problem was solved by Royer and Mittra (1971) and is also discussed in Chapter 5 of this dissertation. The open region canonical problem allows one to solve the open region analogue of the dielectric step, the semi-infinite dielectric waveguide. This problem has not yet received a satisfactory analytical solution. One cannot, however, solve the coaxial and circular analogue of these parallel plate problems because the hybrid nature of the mode structure does not permit a solution of this form.

Chapter 14: Comments and Final Summary

This dissertation has endeavored to fill the gaps that existed in the modified residue calculus and modified function theoretic techniques. The key to this realization has been the identification of certain canonical problems. In the case of part I of the dissertation, the canonical problem was the bifurcated waveguide filled with homogeneous media. For part II, the canonical problem was the semi-infinite parallel plate waveguide. choices of canonical problems were made because of the cartesian nature of problems were to be solved. choice of canonical problems is by no means an implied limitation of the MRCT and MFTT. For example, a wide range of problems dealing with the modification of semiinfinite circular or coaxial waveguide can be solved in the same manner. For example, one can solve the problem of a non-contacting coaxial short by recognizing that it is a modification of the coaxial bifurcated junction. Such a solution would involve the construction of two holomorphic functions, one with a single modification and the other with a double modification.

One can also solve a wide class of modified semiinfinite circular and coaxial open region waveguide problems. The primary difficulty in this case compared to the
closed region is that the solution of the associated
homogeneous Hilbert problem must be obtained numerically.

numerical techniques such as the method of moments to solve the canonical problem.

Both the MRCT and the MFTT have their foundation in the generalized scattering matrix technique (GSMT). As an alternative to the development of the MRCT and the MFTT one might also consider extending the GSMT to include asymptotic terms. Such terms would compensate for the major weakness of the GSMT: the failure to change the edge condition to conform with the known asymptotic solution. In fact, this particular technique might prove to be more powerful than either the MRCT or the MFTT since it is not limited to problems which are basically two dimensional in nature.

It is hoped that these comments will be useful to the researcher interested in the extension of these techniques.

One area which was not explored in this dissertation was the ultimate use of the asymptotics. Most of the numerical solutions given displayed several place accuracy with only a few perturbational terms or only a few sample points of a continuous perturbational spectrum. The logical course one can follow from this is to solve problems using the MRCT and the MFTT using only the asymptotic terms. Such solutions should easily have two place accuracy and be quite sufficient for many engineering tasks. This technique might be comparible to say the geometrical theory of diffraction where nominally two place accuracy is obtained (Yee, Felson, and Keller, 1968). In fact, an investigation into the connection between these two techniques might prove very fruitful.

Yet another area of investigation inspired by this dissertation is the very nature of the solutions them-selves. In essence, both the MRCT and the MFTT seek solutions by expanding the spectral representations of the fields using their singularities. In this case the singularities are either simple poles or branch points. This is very similar to the singularity expansion method (SEM) expounded by Carl Baum (1973) for solving electromagnetic transient problems. This leads one to ask the question if more complicated problems which do not have Wiener-Hopf type canonical problems can be solved using the same basic technique. One would then depend on a

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abramowitz, M. and I.A. Stegun (1965), Handbook of Mathematical Functions, Dover Publications, New York, New York, pp. 231-233.
- Amitay, N., V. Galindo, and C.P. Wu (1972), Theory and Analysis of Phased Array Antennas, Wiley-Interscience, New York.
- Bates, C.P. and R. Mittra (1968), "Waveguide Excitation of Dielectric and Plasma Slabs," Radio Science, 3, pp. 251-266.
- Baum, C. (1973), "Introduction to SEM," 1973 G-AP International Symposium Digest, Boulder, Co., pp. 459-462.
- Chang, D.C. (1971), "Characteristics of a Horizontal Loop Antenna over a Dissipative Half Space," Tech. Report No. 4, University of Colorado, Boulder.
- Davis, H.T. (1962), <u>The Summation of Series</u>, Principia Press of Trinity University, San Antonio, Texas, Chap. 2.
- Dybdal, R.B., R.C. Rudduck, and L.L. Tsai (1966), "Mutual Coupling Between TEM and TE₀₁ Parallel Plate Waveguide Apertures," IEEE Trans., AP-14, pp. 574-580.
- Erdelyi, A. et al. (1954), <u>Higher Trancendental Functions</u>, McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Evgrafov, M.A. (1961), <u>Asymptotic Estimates and Entire</u>
 <u>Functions</u>, Gordon and Breach, New York, New York.
- Gel'fand, I.M. and G.E. Shilov (1964), Generalized Functions, Academic Press, New York, vol. 1, Chap. 2.
- Gradshteyn, I.S. and J.M. Ryzhik (1965), <u>Table of Integrals</u>, <u>Series</u>, and <u>Products</u>, Academic Press, New York, New York, p. 284.
- Heins, A.E. (1948), "Systems of Wiener-Hopf Integral Equations and Their Application to Some Boundary Value Problems in Electromagnetic Theory," Proc. Symposia, Appl. Math., 2, Amer. Math. Soc., New York, New York, pp. 76-81.
- Igarashi, Q. (1964), "Simultaneous Wiener-Hopf Equations and Their Application to Diffraction Problems in Electromagnetic Theory," J. Phys. Soc., Japan, 19, No. 7, pp. 1213-1221.

- Itoh, T. and R. Mittra (1971), "A New Method of Solution for Radiation from a Flanged Waveguide," Proc. IEEE, 59, pp. 1131-1133.
- Kostelnicek, R.J. and R. Mittra (1969), "Radiation from an Open Ended Waveguide into an Inhomogeneously Filled Space," Scientific Report No. 12, University of Illinois, Urbana.
- Kostelnicek, R.J. and R. Mittra (1971), "Radiation from a Parallel Plate Waveguide into a Dielectric or Plasma Layer," Radio Science, 6, No. 11, pp. 981-990.
- Lee, S.W. (1967), "Radiation from the Infinite Aperiodic Array of Parallel Plate Waveguides," IEEE Trans., AP-15, pp. 598-606.
- Lee, S.W. and R. Mittra (1968), "Diffraction by Thick Conducting Half-Plane and a Dielectric-Loaded Wave-guide," IEEE Trans., AP-16, pp. 454-461.
- Marcuvitz, N. (1964), Waveguide Handbook, Dover Publications, New York, New York.
- Mittra, R. and S.W. Lee (1970), "On the Solution of a Generalized Wiener-Hopf Equation," J. of Math. Phys., 2, No. 3, pp. 775-783.
- Mittra, R. and S.W. Lee (1971), <u>Analytical Techniques in</u>
 the Theory of Guided Waves, The MacMillan Company,
 New York, New York.
- Mittra, R. and J.L. Richardson (1970), "A Numerical Technique for Solving a Class of Open Region Radiation and Scattering Problems," Proc. IEEE, <u>58</u>, No. 2, pp. 276-278.
- Mittra, R., S.W. Lee and G.F. VanBlaricum, Jr. (1968),
 "A Modified Residue Calculus Technique," Intern. J.
 Eng. Sci., 6, No. 7, pp. 395-408.
- Montgomery, J.P. (1971), "On the Complete Eigenvalue Solution of Ridged Waveguide," IEEE Trans., MTT-14, pp. 547-555.
- Montgomery, J.P. (1973), "Comments on Radiation from a Parallel Plate Waveguide into a Dielectric or Plasma Layer," Radio Science, to be published in October.
- Muskhelishvili, N.I. (1953), Singular Integral Equations, P. Noordhoff N.V., Groningerr, Holland.

- Pace, J. and R. Mittra (1964), "Generalized Scattering Matrix Analysis of Waveguide Discontinuity Problems,"

 Quasi-Optics, XIV, Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn Press, New York, pp. 177-197.
- Pace, J. and R. Mittra (1966), "The Trifurcated Waveguide," Radio Science, 1, pp. 117-121.
- Royer, E.G. and R. Mittra (1972), "The Diffraction of Electromagnetic Waves by Dielectric Steps in Waveguides," IEEE Trans. MTT-20, pp. 273-279.
- Rudduck, R.C., L.L. Tsai, and W.D. Burnside (1969), "Reflection Coefficient of a Parallel Plate Waveguide Illuminating a Conducting Sheet," IEEE Trans.. AP-17. pp. 175-179.
- Ward, S.H. (1967), Mining Geophysics, Vol. 2. Chap. 2, Pts. A and C, Society of Exploration Geophysicists. Tulsa, Oklahoma.
- Weinstein, L.A. (1969). The Theory of Diffraction and the Factorization Method. Golem Press, Boulder, Colo.
- Wu, C.P. (1969), "Integral Equation Solutions for the Radiation from a Waveguide Through a Dielectric Slab," IEEE Trans., AP-17, No. 6, pp. \$33-739.
- Yee, H.Y., L.B. Felson, and J.B. Keller (1968), "Ray Theory of Reflection from the Open End of a Waveguide," SIAM J. Appl. Math., 16, pp. 268-300.

| | | | · |
|---|--|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | · | |
| | | | |
| • | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Appendix A: The Edge Condition and the Asymptotic Behavior of $T(\omega)$

From Mittra and Lee (1971) it is easy to show that E_x must behave as $|x-x_1|^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ as $x \to x_1$ with $z = z_0$. Similarly, E_z must behave as $|z-z_0|^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ as $z \to z_0$ and $x = x_1$. It is then easy to show that

$${}_{e}^{\gamma} nb^{z} o_{B_{n}} = 0[(-1)^{n} n^{-3/2}]$$
 (A.1)

$$e^{\gamma_{nc}z_{O_{C_{n}}}} = O[n^{-3/2}]$$
 (A.2)

$$e^{-\gamma_{na}z_{O}}A_{n} = O[n^{-3/2} \sin \frac{n\pi b}{a}] \qquad (A.3)$$

Using property (vii) of section 2 and (A.1) we see that

$$T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2}) \tag{A.4}$$

for $\omega = -\gamma_{mb}$, $m \to \infty$. Using property (vi) of section 2, Chapter 2 and (A.2), (A.4) is true for $\omega = -\gamma_{mc}$, $m \to \infty$. Similarly using property (ii) of section 2 and (A.3), we have

RES[T,
$$\gamma_{na}$$
] = $0(n^{-1/2} \sin^2 \frac{n\pi b}{a})$

for n $\rightarrow \infty$. This is equivalent to saying (A.4) holds as $\omega \rightarrow \gamma_{na}$, n $\rightarrow \infty$ (see Royer and Mittra, 1972). Hence we have that

$$T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2}) \qquad |\omega| \to \infty \qquad (A.5)$$

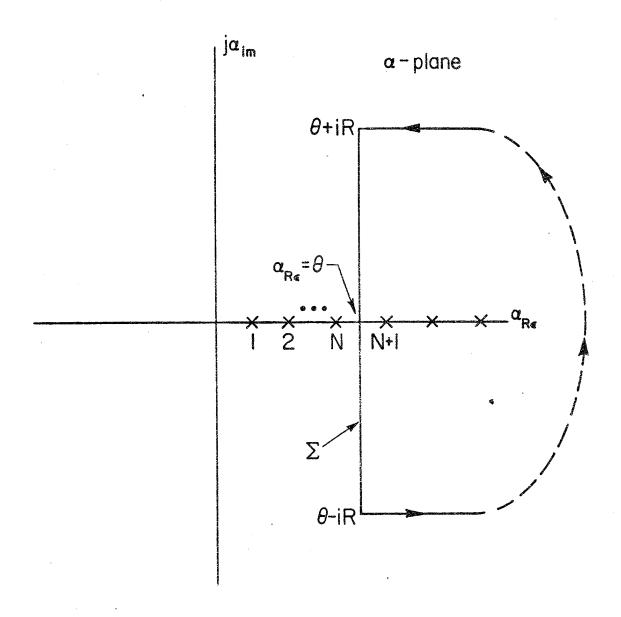


Fig. B-1: Contour of Integration for Asymptotic Evaluation of Sum.

Appendix B: Asymptotic Behavior of the Perturbation

Sum for the E-Plane Step

Consider

$$S = \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1-\Delta}}{\omega - n}$$
 (B.1)

In order to examine this sum for $|\omega| \rightarrow \infty$ we follow Evgrafov (1961) and examine the contour integral

$$S^{1} = \frac{1}{2j} \int \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} \cot \alpha \pi \ d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$
 (B.2)

where the contour is shown in Figure B-1.

Following Evgrafov (1961) we first evaluate the integral by residues

$$S^{1} = \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1-\Delta}}{\omega - n} + \pi \omega^{-1-\Delta} \cot \omega \pi$$
 (B.3)

for R $\rightarrow \infty$ and Re $\omega > \theta$. But let us now seek an alternate representation of (B.2). Note that

cot
$$\alpha\pi \rightarrow -j$$
 sign (α_{imag}) $|\alpha_{imag}| \rightarrow \infty$

and hence let us examine

$$S^{1} = \frac{-1}{2j} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{+} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta}(\cot \alpha\pi + j)d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{+} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta}d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \frac{1}{2j} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{-} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta}d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \frac{1}{2j} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{-} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta}d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$

where C_{θ}^{+} is the contour (θ , θ +iR, ∞ +iR) and C_{θ}^{-} is (θ , θ -iR, ∞ -iR) as R $\rightarrow \infty$

$$\cot \alpha \pi \pm \beta = 0(e^{-2\pi R})$$

and thus

$$+ \frac{1}{2j} \int_{\theta}^{\theta - j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta}(\cot \alpha \pi - j) d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$

$$= PV \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} - \int_{\theta}^{\theta + j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta} d\alpha}{(\omega - \alpha)(1 - e^{-2j\alpha\pi})}$$

$$+ \int_{\theta}^{\theta - j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta} d\alpha}{(\omega - \alpha)(e^{j2\alpha\pi} - 1)}$$
(B.4)

as $\omega \to \infty$ we use the residue term at $\alpha = \omega$ and the principle value integral as the leading terms.

$$S = O(\omega^{-1}) + O(\omega^{-1-\Delta})$$
 (B.5)

For arg $\omega = \pi$, we have

$$S^{1} = \int_{n=N+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1-\Delta}}{\omega - n}$$

$$= \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} - \int_{\theta}^{\theta + j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{(\omega - \alpha)(1 - e^{-2j\alpha\pi})}$$

$$+ \int_{\theta}^{\theta - j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{(\omega - \alpha)(e^{j2\alpha\pi} - 1)}$$
(B.6)

as $\omega \to \infty$, we use the first integral as the leading term. By changing variables we recognize the integral to be a hypergeometric function (Gradshteyn and Ryzhik, 1965). From the hypergeometric function, it is easy to show that again we have (B.5).

Hence (3.11) is justified.

$$S^{1} = \frac{-1}{2j} \int_{\theta}^{\theta + j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta}(\cot \alpha \pi + j) d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \frac{1}{2j} \int_{\theta}^{\theta - j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta}(\cot \alpha \pi - j) d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{\theta + j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1 - \Delta}(\cot \alpha \pi - j) d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$

Now consider deforming the contours C_{θ}^+ , C_{θ}^- to $(\theta \pm i\epsilon)$, $\infty \pm i\epsilon$ as $\epsilon \to 0$. If Im $\omega > 0$ then

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{+} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} - \pi j \omega^{-1-\Delta}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{-} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$

If Im $\omega < 0$

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{+} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}}^{-} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \pi j \omega^{-1-\Delta}$$

and if $Im \omega = 0$

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}^{+}}^{+} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{C_{\theta}^{-}}^{-} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} = PV \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$

For our purposes it is sufficient to consider two cases: (1) Re ω > θ , and (2) Re ω < θ . For Re ω > θ we have

$$S^{1} = \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1-\Delta}}{\omega - n} + \pi \omega^{-1-\Delta} \cot \omega \pi$$

$$= PV \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta} d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha} - \frac{1}{2j} \int_{0}^{0+j\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-1-\Delta}(\cot \alpha\pi + j) d\alpha}{\omega - \alpha}$$
(B.4)

Appendix C: Asymptotic Behavior of the Perturbation

Sum for the Trifurcated Waveguide

Consider

$$S = \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \frac{n^{-1} \sin n\theta}{n - \omega}$$
 (C.1)

In order to examine this sum for $|\omega| \to \infty$ we follow Evgrafov (1961) and examine the contour integral

$$S^{1} = \frac{1}{2j} \int_{\Sigma} \frac{\sin \alpha \theta \cot \alpha \pi d\alpha}{\alpha(\alpha - \omega)}$$
 (C.2)

where Σ is shown in Figure B-1 (replace θ by θ to eliminate confusion). Evaluating the integral by residues

$$S^{1} = \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \frac{\sin n\theta}{n(n-\omega)} + \frac{\pi \sin \omega\theta \cot \omega\pi}{\omega}$$
 (C.3)

for R $\rightarrow \infty$ and Re $\omega > \theta_0$. In a similar manner to Appendix B we can find the following alternate representation of (C.2).

$$S^{1} = PV \int_{\theta}^{\infty} \frac{\sin \alpha \theta \, d\alpha}{\alpha(\alpha - \omega)} + \int_{\theta}^{\theta + j\infty} \cdots + \int_{\theta}^{\theta - j\infty} \cdots$$
 (C.4)

for arg w=0 and where the second and third integrals are similar to those given in Appendix B and are not given since only the leading terms of the asymptotic expansion of S are desired.

Let us examine the integral and the residue term as the leading terms

$$PV \int_{\theta_{0}}^{\infty} \frac{\sin \alpha \theta \ d\alpha}{\alpha (\alpha - \omega)} = \frac{-1}{\omega} \int_{\theta_{0}}^{\infty} \frac{\sin \alpha \theta \ d\alpha}{\alpha} + \frac{1}{\omega} PV \int_{\theta_{0}}^{\infty} \frac{\sin \alpha \theta \ d\alpha}{\alpha - \omega}$$

The first term is order ω^{-1} . The second integral can be evaluated asymptotically by changing variables and using asymptotic expansions of the sine and cosine integrals given in Abramowitz and Stegun (1965). This yields

$$PV \int_{\theta_{0}}^{\infty} \frac{\sin \alpha \theta \ d\alpha}{\alpha - \omega} \simeq \pi \cos \omega \theta$$

Thus

$$S = O(\omega^{-1}) + O\left(\omega^{-1} \frac{\sin \omega(\pi - \theta)}{\sin \omega\pi}\right)$$
 (C.5)

as $\omega \rightarrow \infty$.

Appendix D: Evaluation of the Infinite Product for the Electric Wall Case

Consider the product

$$P(\omega) = \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1-\omega/\gamma_{nb})(1-\omega/\gamma_{nc})}{(1-\omega/\gamma_{nb})}$$
 (D.1)

This can be written as

$$P(\omega) = \prod_{n=1}^{N-1} \frac{(1-\omega/\gamma_{nb})(1-\omega/\gamma_{nc})}{(1-\omega/\gamma_{na})} R_{N}(\omega)$$
 (D.2)

where $R_N(\omega)$ is the remainder. Following a procedure similar to Kostelnicek and Mittra (1969) we have

$$R (\omega) = \exp\left\{\sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \left(\ln\left(1 - \frac{\omega}{\gamma_{nb}}\right) + \ln\left(1 - \frac{\omega}{\gamma_{nc}}\right) - \ln\left(1 - \frac{\omega}{\gamma_{na}}\right)\right\}\right\}$$

for $|\omega/\gamma_{nb}|$, $|\omega/\gamma_{nc}|$, $|\omega/\gamma_{na}|$ < 1 we can expand the logarithmic terms

$$R_{N}(\omega) = \exp\left\{-\sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{\omega^{m}}{m} \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_{nb}^{m}} + \frac{1}{\gamma_{nc}^{m}} - \frac{1}{\gamma_{na}^{m}}\right)\right\} \qquad (D.4)$$

Now consider the expansion

$$\frac{1}{\gamma_{nb}^{m}} = \left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{m} \left(1 + \frac{m}{2} \left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{2} + \frac{(m/2+1)m/2}{2!} \left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{4} + \frac{(m/2+2)(m/2+1)m/2}{3!} \left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{6} + \cdots \right)$$

$$= \left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{m} \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} C_{p}^{(m)} \left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2} \qquad (D.5)$$

where $k_0 = 1$ is convenient.

Thus

$$R_{N}(\omega) = \exp\left\{-\sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{\omega^{m}}{m} \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} C_{p}^{(m)} \left(\left(\frac{b}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m}\right) + \left(\frac{c}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} - \left(\frac{a}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m}\right\}$$

$$\left\{ \left(\frac{c}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} - \left(\frac{a}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} \right\}$$

$$\left\{ \left(\frac{c}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} - \left(\frac{a}{n\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} \right\}$$

Using Davis (1962) we find that we can evaluate sums of reciprocal powers of integers using polygamma functions.

$$\sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{m}} = \frac{(-1)^{m}}{(m-1)!} \psi^{(m-1)}(N)$$
 (D.7)

is chosen large enough that an asymptotic expansion of is used. Only two or three terms of this series are nerally needed to find the polygamma function. Reversing orders of summation of (D.6) we have

$$R_{N}(\omega) = \exp\left\{-\sum_{m=2}^{\infty} \frac{\omega^{m}}{m} \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} C_{p}^{(m)} \left(\left(\frac{b}{\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} + \left(\frac{c}{\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} - \left(\frac{a}{\pi}\right)^{2p-2+m} \right\} \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2p-2+m}} - \omega \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_{nb}} + \frac{1}{\gamma_{nc}} - \frac{1}{\gamma_{na}} \right) \right\}$$

Note that the linear term of ω is isolated. Let us consider this last term for a finite upper limit and use (0.5)

$$\sum_{n=N}^{M} \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_{nb}} + \frac{1}{\gamma_{nc}} - \frac{1}{\gamma_{na}} \right) = \sum_{n=N}^{M} \left(\left(\frac{b}{n\pi} \right) \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} C_{p}^{(1)} \left(\frac{b}{n\pi} \right)^{2p-2} + \left(\frac{c}{n\pi} \right) \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} C_{p}^{(1)} \left(\frac{b}{n\pi} \right)^{2p-2} - \left(\frac{a}{n\pi} \right) \sum_{p=1}^{\infty} C_{p}^{(1)} \left(\frac{a}{n\pi} \right)^{2p-2} \right)$$

but b \div c = a thus as M $\rightarrow \infty$.

$$\sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_{nb}} + \frac{1}{\gamma_{nc}} - \frac{1}{\gamma_{na}} \right) = \sum_{p=2}^{\infty} \left\{ c_p^{(1)} \left(\left(\frac{b}{\pi} \right)^{2p-2} + \left(\frac{c}{\pi} \right)^{2p-2} - \left(\frac{a}{\pi} \right)^{2p-2} \right\} \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2p-1}} \right\}$$

$$(D.9)$$

The summation over p and n are fastly convergent. In order to determine how many powers of ω are necessary the remainder term (of ω) can be approximated by using a procedure similar to Kostelnicek (1969). Using the approximation $\gamma_{nh} \simeq n\pi/h$ in the sum

$$S_{M} = -\sum_{m=M}^{\infty} \frac{\omega^{m}}{m} \sum_{n=N}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_{nb}^{m}} + \frac{1}{\gamma_{nc}^{m}} - \frac{1}{\gamma_{na}^{m}} \right)$$
 (p.10)

we find

$$S_{M} \simeq -N \left\{ g_{M} \left(\frac{\omega b}{N \pi} \right) + g_{M} \left(\frac{\omega c}{N \pi} \right) - g_{M} \left(\frac{\omega a}{N \pi} \right) \right\} \qquad (D.11)$$

where

$$g_{M}(t) = \sum_{m=M}^{\infty} \frac{t^{m}}{m(m-1)}$$

This enables the remaining sum to be truncated accurately.

Appendix E: The Canonical Problem with a Magnetic Symmetry Boundary

Consider Figure 3.2.1, except let the boundary at $x=x_0$ be a magnetic wall. We can find the TM fields from ϕ = H $_y$ where

$$\phi_{A} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[A_{n}^{(o)} e^{\gamma_{2n-1,2a}^{z}} + A_{n} e^{-\gamma_{2n-1,2a}^{z}} \right] \sin k_{na}(x-x_{o})$$
(E.1)

$$\phi_{B} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [B_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{2n-1}, 2b^{z}} + B_{n}e^{\gamma_{2n-1}, 2b^{z}}] \sin k_{nb}(x-x_{o})$$
(E.2)

$$\phi_{C} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[C_{n}^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{nc} z} + C_{n} e^{\gamma_{nc} z} \right] \cos \frac{n\pi}{c} (x-x_{1})$$
 (E.3)

where

$$k_{na} = \frac{(2n-1)\pi}{2a}, \quad k_{nb} = \frac{(2n-1)\pi}{2b}$$

Note that regions A and B cannot support a TEM mode.

We proceed in an identical manner as section 2 and find that the solution may be found from a meromorphic function $T(\omega)$ which has the properties:

(i) RES[T,
$$\gamma_{2n-1,2a}$$
] = $k_{na} \cos k_{na} b A_{n} e^{-\gamma_{2n-1,2a} z}$ o
 $n = 1,2,\cdots$

(ii) RES[T,-
$$\gamma_{2n-1,2a}$$
] = $k_{na} \cos k_{na} b A_n^{(0)} e^{\gamma_{2n-1,2a}} o$
 $n = 1.2...$

(iii)
$$T(\gamma_{nc}) = -\gamma_{nc} c c_n^{(o)} e^{-\gamma_{nc}^z} o$$
 $n = 1, 2, \cdots$

(iv)
$$T(jk_o) = -2jk_o c C_n^{(o)} e^{-jk_o z_o}$$

(v)
$$(-1)^{n+1}T(\gamma_{2n-1,2b}) = \gamma_{2n-1,2b} b B_n^{(0)} e^{-\gamma_{2n-1,2b}z_0}$$

 $n = 1,2,\cdots$

(vi)
$$T(-\gamma_{nc}) = \gamma_{nc} c c_n e^{-\gamma_{nc} z} o$$
 $n = 1,2,\cdots$

(vii)
$$T(-jk_0) = 2jk_0 c c_0 e^{jk_0z_0}$$

(viii)
$$(-1)^{n+1}T(-\gamma_{2n-1,2b}) = -\gamma_{2n-1,2b}$$
 b $B_n e^{\gamma_{2n-1,2b}z_0}$ n = 1,2,...

(ix)
$$T(\omega) = O(\omega^{-1/2})$$
 $|\omega| \to \infty$

 $T(\omega)$ can be constructed as follows:

$$T(\omega) = H(\omega)F(\omega)\left(K_0 + (\omega - jk_0)\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{(c)}}{\omega - \gamma_{nc}}\right\}\right)$$

$$+ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{(b)}}{\omega - \gamma_{2n-1,2b}} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_n^{(a)}}{\omega + \gamma_{2n-1,2a}}\right\}$$
(E.4)

where

$$H(\omega) = \exp \left\{ \frac{-\omega}{\pi} \left(b \ln \frac{b}{a} + c \ln \frac{c}{a} - 2c \ln 2 \right) \right\}$$
 and

$$F(\omega) = \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1 - \omega/\gamma_{2n-1,2b})(1 - \omega/\gamma_{nc})}{(1 - \omega/\gamma_{2n-1,2b})}$$
(E.6)

 K_0 , $g_n^{(c)}$, $g_n^{(b)}$, $g_n^{(a)}$ are related to the incident fields by (iv), (iii), (v) and (ii).

Appendix F: The Trifurcated Waveguide with a Magnetic Wall

Figure F-1 illustrates the magnetic wall trifurcated waveguide and the auxiliary problem.

The solution is obtained by constructing two mermorphic functions.

$$T_{1}(\omega) = H_{1}(\omega)F_{1}(\omega)\left(K_{0}^{(1)} + (\omega-jk_{0})\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(1)}}{\omega+\gamma_{nc}}\right) \quad (F.1)$$

$$T_{2}(\omega) = H_{2}(\omega)F_{2}(\omega)\left[K_{0}^{(2)} + (\omega-jk_{0})\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g_{n}^{(2)}}{\omega-\gamma_{nc}}\right] \quad (F.2)$$

where $T_1(\omega)$ is identified with the junction at z=0 and $T_2(\omega)$ is identified with the junction $z=\Delta$. $H_1(\omega)$, $H_2(\omega)$, $F_1(\omega)$, $F_2(\omega)$, $K_0^{(1)}$, and $K_0^{(2)}$ are given by (E.4)--(E.6) with only a change of geometrical factors necessary.

We can derive two infinite equations for $g_n^{(1)}$ and $g_n^{(2)}$ by requiring that the expressions for the modal coefficients in the coupling region be consistent.

RES[T₁,
$$Y_{2n-1,2e}$$
] = $g_n^{(2)} [K_n^{(2)}]^{-1} k_{ne} \cos k_{ne} b.$ (F.3)

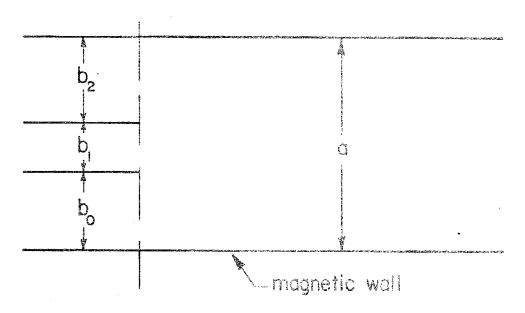
$$(-1)^{n+1}T_2(-\gamma_{2n-1,2c}) = -\frac{1}{2n-1,2c} c g_n^{(1)}[K_n^{(1)}]^{-1} (F.4)$$

where

$$g_n^{(1)} = K_n^{(1)} C_n^-$$
 (F.5)

$$g_n^{(2)} = K_n^{(2)} C_n^+$$
 (F.6)

and $K_n^{(1)}$ and $K_n^{(2)}$ are found from properties (ii) and (iii) of Appendix E.



(a) The Trifurcated Waveguide

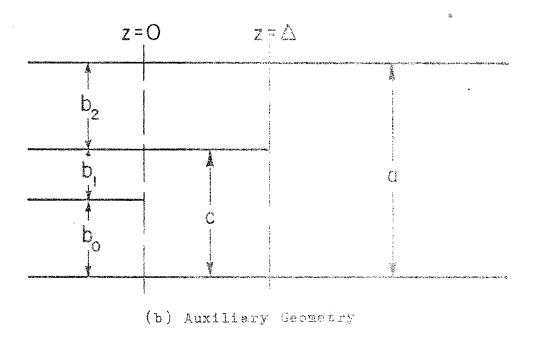


Fig. F-1: The Trifurcated Waveguide (with a Magnetic Symmetry Wall) and the Auxiliary Froblem.

In order to truncate equations (F.3) and (F.4) we find the asymptotic behavior of $g_n^{(1)}$ and $g_n^{(2)}$. From (F.5) and (F.6) we can find

$$g_n^{(1)}, g_n^{(2)} = 0 \left(n^{-1} (-1)^n \cos k_{n,c} b_o \right)$$
 (F.7)

This choice allows the efficient solution of equations.